

2007 TL

Owner's Manual

(Unlinked)

This document does not contain hyperlinks and may be formatted for printing instead of web us. This is due to changes in content and specifications of the vehicle that happen throughout the model year. This manual will be replaced with a hyperlinked version at the end of the model year.

© 2007 Honda Motor Co., Ltd.

P/N 31SEP6311

Owner's Identification

OWNER _____

ADDRESS _____

STREET

CITY

STATE/PROVINCE

ZIP CODE/
POSTAL CODE

V. I. N. _____

DELIVERY DATE _____

(Date sold to original retail purchaser)

DEALER NAME _____ DEALER NO. _____

ADDRESS _____

STREET

CITY

STATE/PROVINCE

ZIP CODE/
POSTAL CODE

OWNER'S SIGNATURE _____

DEALER'S SIGNATURE _____

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of the 2007 Acura TL. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation whatsoever.

**POUR CLIENTS CANADIEN
AVIS IMPORTANT: Si vous avez
besoin d'un Manuel du Conducteur
en français, veuillez demander à
votre concessionnaire de
commander le numéro de pièce
33SEPC30.**

Introduction

Congratulations! Your selection of a 2007 Acura TL was a wise investment. It will give you years of driving pleasure.

One of the best ways to enhance the enjoyment of your new vehicle is to read this manual. In it, you will learn how to operate its driving controls and convenience items. Afterwards, keep this owner's manual in your vehicle so you can refer to it at any time.

Several warranties protect your new vehicle. Read the warranty booklet thoroughly so you understand the coverages and are aware of your rights and responsibilities.

Maintaining your vehicle according to the maintenance minder shown in the instrument panel helps to keep your driving trouble-free while it preserves your investment. When your vehicle needs maintenance, keep in mind that your dealer's staff is specially trained in servicing the many systems unique to your vehicle. Your dealer is dedicated to your satisfaction and will be pleased to answer any questions and concerns.

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a **NOTICE** symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Introduction

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING: This product contains or emits chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with one or more devices commonly referred to as event data recorders. These devices record front seat belt use, front passenger seat occupancy, airbag deployment data, and the failure of any airbag system component. This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential and is never linked to the vehicle owner.

California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** — on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** — preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**.
These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You **WILL** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You **CAN** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You **CAN** be **HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** — such as Important Safety Reminders or Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** — such as Driver and Passenger Safety.
- **Instructions** — how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information — please read it carefully.

06/08/18 20:48:56 31SEP630 0005

Contents

Your Vehicle at a Glance (main controls)	3	
Driver and Passenger Safety (seat belts, SRS, and child protection)	5	
Instruments and Controls (indicators, gauges, multi-information display, dashboard, and steering column)	55	
Features (climate, audio, steering wheel, security, cruise control, and HomeLink)	125	
Before Driving (fuel, vehicle break-in, and cargo loading)	233	
Driving (engine and transmission operation).....	245	
Maintenance (minder, fluid checking, minor services, and vehicle storage).....	271	
Taking Care of the Unexpected (flat tire, dead battery, overheating, fuses).....	311	
Technical Information (vehicle specifications, tires, fuels, and emissions controls).....	335	
Warranty and Customer Relations (U.S. and Canada only) (warranty and contact information).....	351	
Authorized Manuals (U.S. only) (how to order)	355	
Index	I	INDEX
Service Information Summary (fluid capacities and tire pressures)	last page	

Overview of Contents

Contents

A convenient reference to the sections in this manual.

Your Vehicle at a Glance

A quick reference to the main controls in your vehicle.

Driver and Passenger Safety

Important information about the proper use and care of your vehicle's seat belts, an overview of the Supplemental Restraint System, and valuable information on how to protect children with child restraints.

Instruments and Controls

Explains the purpose of each instrument panel indicator and gauge, and how to use the controls on the dashboard and steering column.

Features

How to operate the heating and air conditioning system, the audio system, and other convenience features.

Before Driving

What gasoline to use, how to break-in your new vehicle, and how to load luggage and other cargo.

Driving

The proper way to start the engine, shift the transmission, and park.

Maintenance

The maintenance minder shows you when you need to take your vehicle to the dealer for maintenance service. There is also a list of things to check and instructions on how to check them.

Taking Care of the Unexpected

This section covers several problems motorists sometimes experience, and details how to handle them.

Technical Information

ID numbers, dimensions, capacities, and technical information.

Warranty and Customer Relations

(U.S. and Canada only)

A summary of the warranties covering your new vehicle, and how to contact us for any reason. Refer to your warranty manual for detailed information.

Authorized Manuals

(U.S. only)

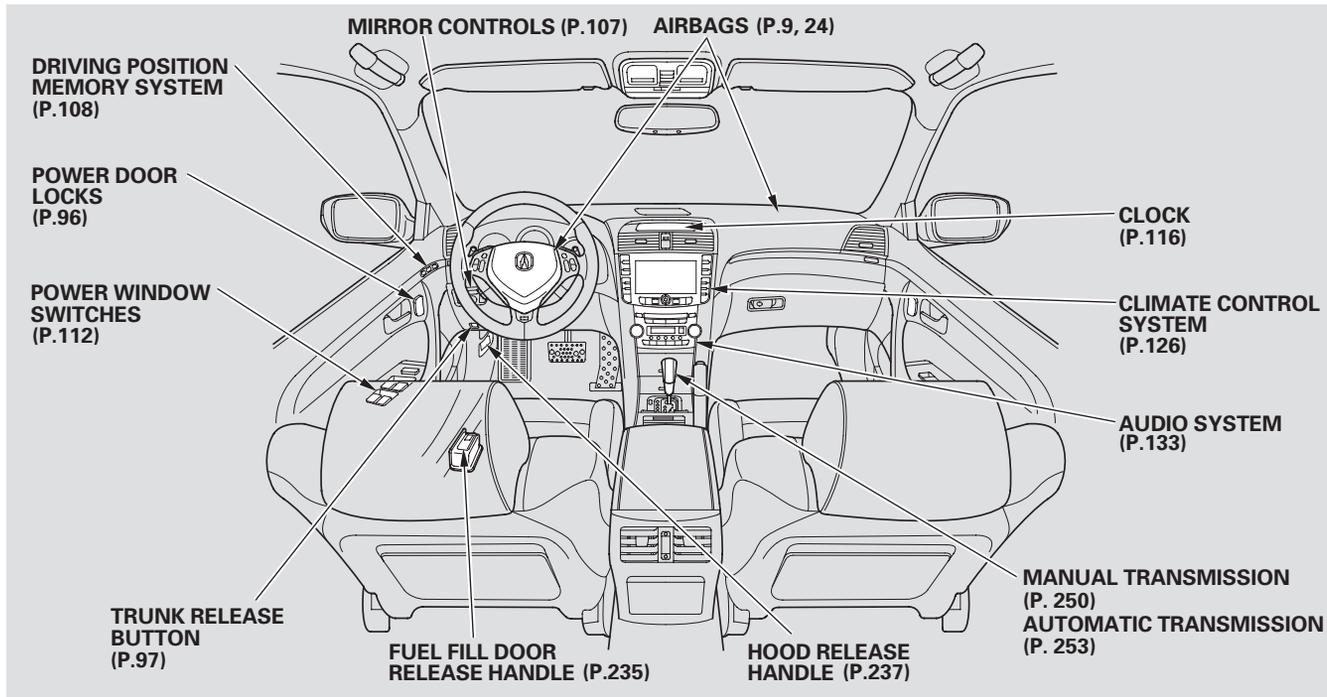
How to order manuals and other technical literature.

Index

Service Information Summary

A summary of the information you need when you pull up to the fuel pump.

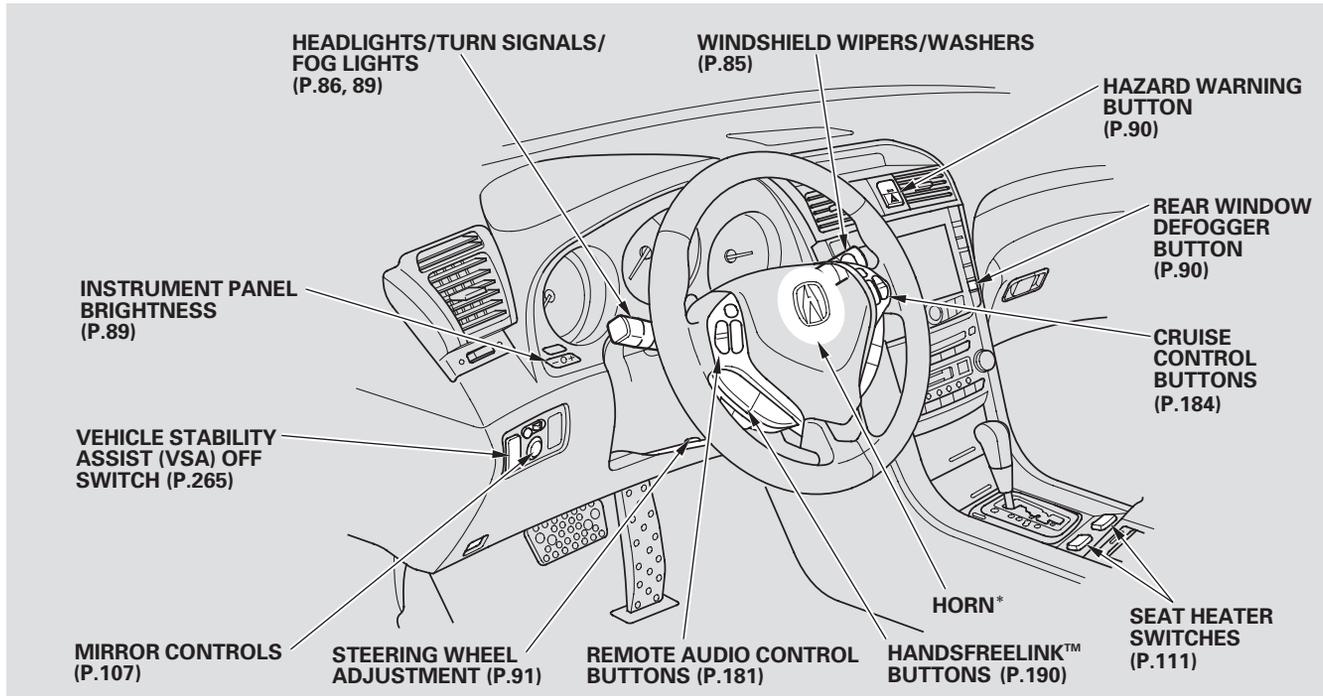
Your Vehicle at a Glance



Your Vehicle at a Glance

Vehicle with navigation system shown

Your Vehicle at a Glance



* : To use the horn, press the center pad of the steering wheel.

Driver and Passenger Safety

This section gives you important information about how to protect yourself and your passengers. It shows you how to use seat belts. It explains how your airbags work. And it tells you how to properly restrain infants and children in your vehicle.

Important Safety Precautions	6
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	7
Protecting Adults and Teens.....	11
1. Close and Lock the Doors	11
2. Adjust the Front Seats	12
3. Adjust the Seat-Backs	13
4. Adjust the Head Restraints	13
5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts.....	14
6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position	16
Advice for Pregnant Women.....	16
Additional Safety Precautions....	17

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts	18
Seat Belt System Components...	18
Lap/Shoulder Belt	19
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners.....	20
Seat Belt Maintenance.....	21
Additional Information About Your Airbags	22
Airbag System Components.....	22
How Your Front Airbags Work.....	24
How Your Side Airbags Work....	27
How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work.....	29
How the SRS Indicator Works... 29	
How The Side Airbag Off Indicator Works	30
How the Passenger Airbag Off Indicator Works	30
Airbag Service	31
Additional Safety Precautions....	32
Protecting Children – General Guidelines	33
All Children Must Be Restrained	33

All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat	34
The Passenger's Front Airbag Can Pose Serious Risks	34
If You Must Drive with Several Children	36
If a Child Requires Close Attention	36
Additional Safety Precautions....	37
Protecting Infants and Small Children	38
Protecting Infants	38
Protecting Small Children	39
Selecting a Child Seat.....	41
Installing a Child Seat	42
With LATCH	43
With a Lap/Shoulder Belt	45
With a Tether	46
Protecting Larger Children	48
Checking Seat Belt Fit	48
Using a Booster Seat	49
When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front.....	50
Additional Safety Precautions....	51
Carbon Monoxide Hazard	52
Safety Labels	53

Important Safety Precautions

You'll find many safety recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The recommendations on this page are the ones we consider to be the most important.

Always Wear Your Seat Belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly (see page 14).

Restrain All Children

Children age 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat (see pages 48 – 51).

Be Aware of Airbag Hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Don't Drink and Drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with

every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

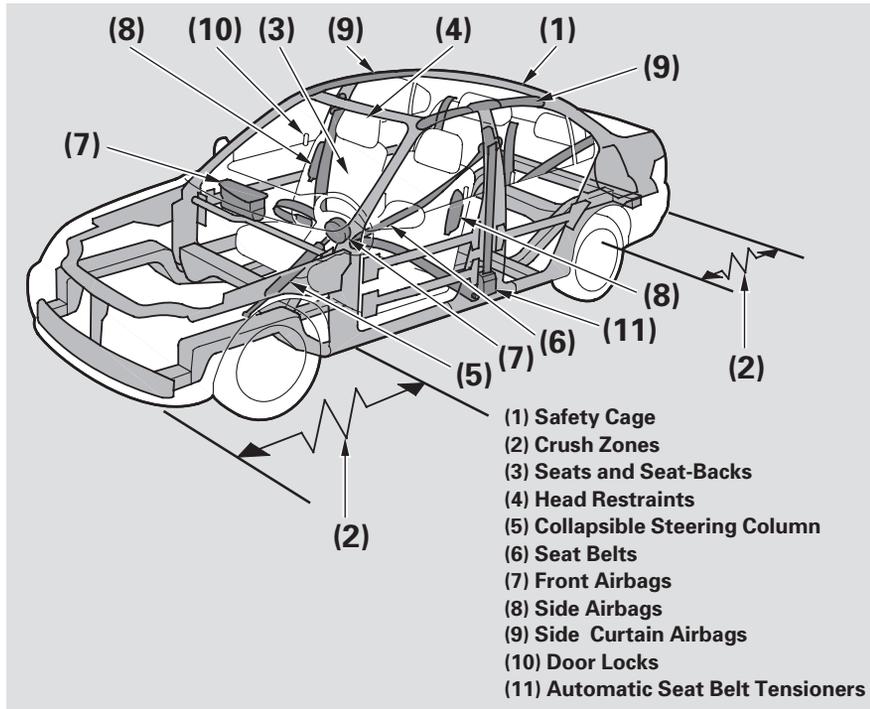
Control Your Speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

Keep Your Vehicle in Safe Condition

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance (see page 278).

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment; front and rear crush zones; a collapsible steering column; and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a crash.

Driver and Passenger Safety

CONTINUED

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

However, you and your passengers can't take full advantage of these features unless you remain sitting in a proper position and ***always wear your seat belts***. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

The following pages explain how you can take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Seat Belts

Your vehicle is equipped with seat belts in all seating positions.

Your seat belt system also includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

Why Wear Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device for adults and larger children. (Infants and smaller children must be properly restrained in child seats.)

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

In addition, most states and all Canadian provinces require you to wear seat belts.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

When properly worn, seat belts:

- Keep you connected to the vehicle so you can take advantage of the vehicle's built-in safety features.
- Help protect you in almost every type of crash, including frontal, side and rear impacts, and rollovers.

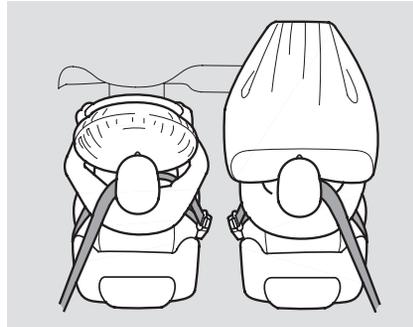
Your Vehicle's Safety Features

- Help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle and against other occupants.
- Keep you from being thrown out of the vehicle.
- Help keep you in a good position should the airbags ever deploy. A good position reduces the risk of injury from an inflating airbag and allows you to get the best advantage from the airbag.

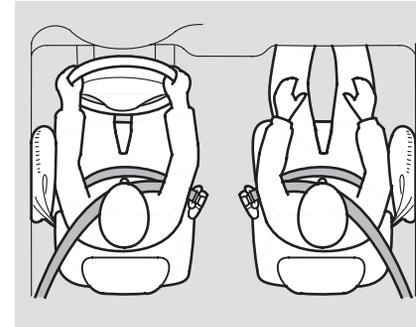
Of course, seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

What You Should Do:
Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly.

Airbags



Your vehicle has a supplemental restraint system (SRS) with front airbags to help protect the heads and chests of the driver and a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe frontal collision (see page 24 for more information on how your front airbags work).

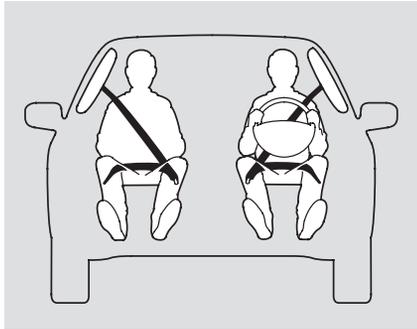


Your vehicle also has side airbags to help protect the upper torso of the driver or a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe side impact (see page 27 for more information on how your side airbags work).

Driver and Passenger Safety

CONTINUED

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



In addition, your vehicle has side curtain airbags to help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger, and passengers in the outer rear seating positions during a moderate to severe side impact (see page 29 for more information on how your side curtain airbags work).

The most important things you need to know about your airbags are:

- ***Airbags do not replace seat belts.*** They are designed to supplement the seat belts.
- ***Airbags offer no protection in rear impacts, or minor frontal or side collisions.***
- ***Airbags can pose serious hazards.*** To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So while airbags help save lives, they can cause minor injuries or more serious or even fatal injuries if occupants are not properly restrained or sitting properly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

The rest of this section gives more detailed information about how you can maximize your safety.

Remember however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Protecting Adults and Teens

Introduction

The following pages provide instructions on how to properly protect the driver, adult passengers and teenage children who are large enough and mature enough to drive or ride in the front seat.

See pages 33 – 37 for important guidelines on how to properly protect infants, small children, and larger children who ride in your vehicle.

1. Close and Lock the Doors

After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure the doors and trunk are closed and locked.



Your vehicle has a door and trunk open monitor on the multi-information display to indicate when a specific door or the trunk is not tightly closed.

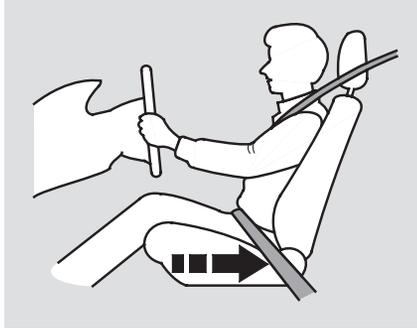
Locking the doors reduces the chance of someone being thrown out of the vehicle during a crash, and it helps prevent passengers from accidentally opening a door and falling out.

Locking the doors also helps prevent an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door when you come to a stop.

See page 96 for how to lock the doors.

Protecting Adults and Teens

2. Adjust the Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. Have your front passenger adjust their seat as far to the rear as possible.

If you sit too close to the steering wheel or dashboard, you can be seriously injured by an inflating front airbag, or by striking the steering wheel or dashboard.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest. In addition to adjusting the seat, you can adjust the steering wheel in and out and up and down (see page 91).

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

⚠ WARNING

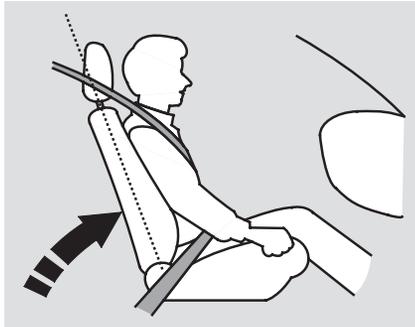
Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible.

See page 103 for how to adjust the front seats.

Protecting Adults and Teens

3. Adjust the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

Passengers with adjustable seat-backs should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

⚠ WARNING

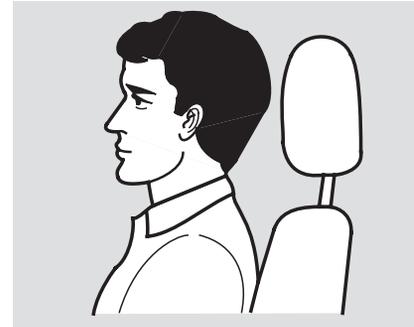
Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

See page 103 for how to adjust the seat-backs.

4. Adjust the Head Restraints



Adjust the driver's head restraint so the back of your head rests against the center of the restraint.

Have passengers adjust their head restraints properly as well. Taller persons should adjust their restraint as high as possible.

Driver and Passenger Safety

CONTINUED

Protecting Adults and Teens

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and you can be seriously injured in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

Properly adjusted head restraints will help protect occupants from whiplash and other crash injuries.

See page 104 for how to adjust the head restraints.

5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts

Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the belt is securely latched. Also check that the belt is not twisted, because a twisted belt can cause serious injuries in a crash.



Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

Protecting Adults and Teens

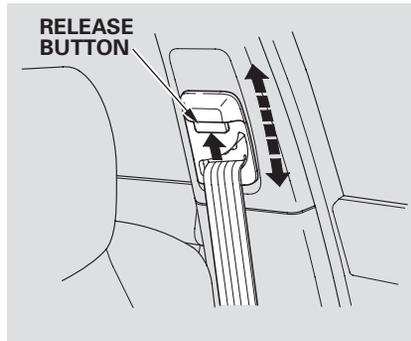
If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

If the seat belt touches or crosses your neck, or if it crosses your arm instead of your shoulder, you need to adjust the seat belt anchor height.



The front seats have adjustable seat belt anchors. To adjust the height of an anchor, press and hold the release button and slide the anchor up or down as needed (it has four positions).

Never place the shoulder portion of a lap/shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.

If a seat belt does not seem to work properly, it may not protect the occupant in a crash.

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt. Using a seat belt that is not working properly can result in serious injury or death. Have your dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

See page 18 for additional information about your seat belts and how to take care of them.

CONTINUED

Protecting Adults and Teens

6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Advice for Pregnant Women



If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt, and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Protecting Adults and Teens

When driving, remember to sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. When riding as a front passenger, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

This will reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by a crash or an inflating front airbag.

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it's okay for you to drive.

Additional Safety Precautions

- **Two people should never use the same seat belt.** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- **Do not put any accessories on seat belts.** Devices intended to improve occupant comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability of the belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- **Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your airbags inflate.

- **Keep your hands and arms away from the airbag covers.** If your hands or arms are close to an airbag cover, they could be injured if the airbags inflate.
- **Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked "SRS AIRBAG" could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.
- **Do not attach hard objects on or near a door.** If a side airbag or a side curtain airbag inflates, a cup holder or other hard object attached on or near the door could be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone.

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Seat Belt System Components

Your seat belt system includes lap/shoulder belts in all five seating positions. The front seat belts are also equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners.

This system uses the same sensors as the front airbags to monitor whether the front seat belts are latched or unlatched, and how much weight is on the front passenger's seat (see pages 26 and 27).



The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

This system monitors the front seat belts. If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before your seat belt is fastened, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash. If your seat belt is not fastened before the beeper stops, the indicator will stop flashing but remain on.

If a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator will come on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position.

If either the driver or a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt while driving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash again at regular intervals.

You will also see a "FASTEN SEAT BELT" or "FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT" message on the multi-information display (see page 68).

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, or a child or small adult is riding there, the indicator should not come on and the beeper should not sound.

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds when the driver's seat belt is latched and there is no front seat passenger and no items on the front seat, something may be interfering with the monitoring system. Look for and remove:

- Any items under the front passenger's seat.
- Any objects hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- Any objects, such as a folded-down back seat, that are touching the rear of the seat-back.

If no obstructions are found, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Lap/Shoulder Belt

The lap/shoulder belt goes over your shoulder, across your chest, and across your hips.

To fasten the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is latched (see page 14 for how to properly position the belt).

To unlock the belt, press the red PRESS button on the buckle. Guide the belt across your body so that it retracts completely. After exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get closed in the door.

All seat belts have an emergency locking retractor. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely in your seat while it keeps some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor automatically locks the belt to help restrain your body.

The seat belts in all positions except the driver's have an additional lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child seat (see page 45).

If the shoulder part of the belt is pulled all the way out, the lockable retractor will activate. The belt will retract, but it will not allow the passenger to move freely.

CONTINUED

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

To deactivate the lockable retractor, unlatch the buckle and let the seat belt fully retract. To refasten the seat belt, pull it out only as far as needed.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners



For added protection, the front seat belts are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners. When activated, the tensioners immediately tighten the belts to help hold the driver and a front passenger in position.

The tensioners are designed to activate in any collision severe enough to cause the front airbags to inflate.

If a side airbag or side curtain airbag deploys during a side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle will also deploy.

The tensioners can also be activated during a collision in which the front airbags *do not deploy*. In this case, the airbags would not be needed, but the additional restraint could be helpful.

When the tensioners are activated, the seat belts will remain tight until they are unbuckled.

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Seat Belt Maintenance

For safety, you should check the condition of your seat belts regularly.

Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear. Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily. If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem (see page 299). Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide good protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

Acura provides a limited warranty on seat belts. See your *Acura Warranty Information* booklet for details.

If a seat belt is worn during a crash, it must be replaced by your dealer. A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash.

The dealer should also inspect the anchors for damage and replace them if needed. If the automatic seat belt tensioners activate during a crash, they must be replaced.

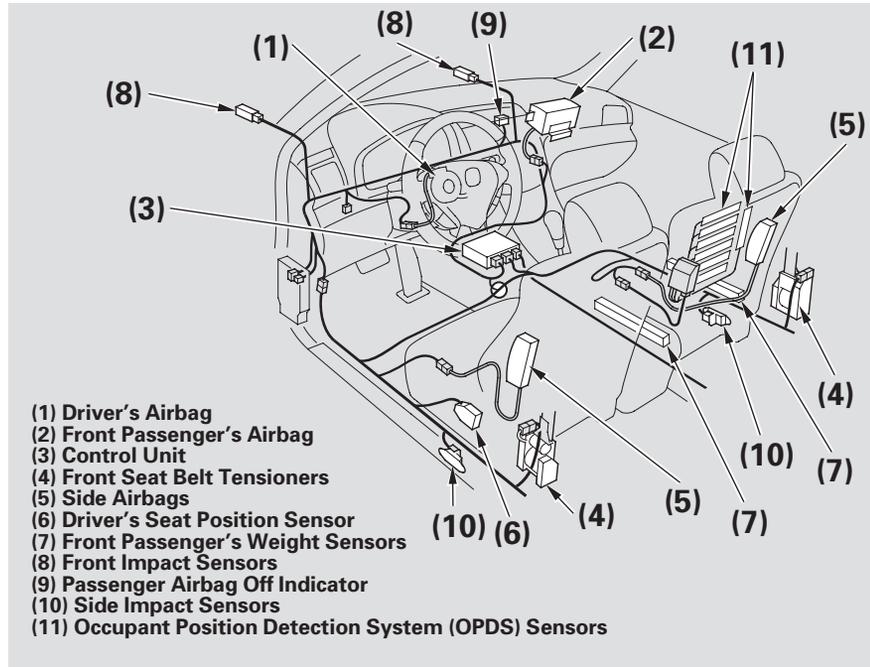
⚠ WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly, and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

Additional Information About Your Airbags

Airbag System Components



Your airbag system includes:

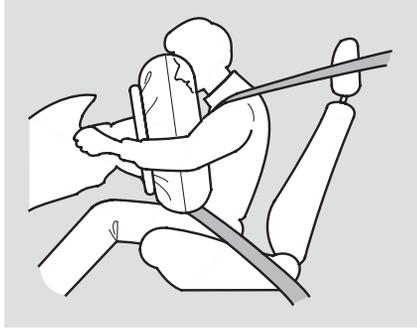
- Two SRS (supplemental restraint system) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked "SRS AIRBAG" (see page 24).
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked "SIDE AIRBAG" (see page 27).
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked "SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG" (see page 29).

Additional Information About Your Airbags

- Automatic front seat belt tensioners (see page 20).
- Sensors that can detect a moderate to severe front impact or side impact.
- Sensors that can detect whether a child is in the passenger's side airbag path and signal the control unit to turn the airbag off (see page 28).
- Sensors that can detect whether the driver's seat belt and a front passenger's seat belt is latched or unlatched (see page 18).
- A driver's seat position sensor that monitors the distance of the seat from the front airbag. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force (see page 26).
- Sensors that monitor the weight on the front passenger's seat. If the weight is about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child), the passenger's front airbag will be turned off (see page 26).
- A sophisticated electronic system that continually monitors and records information about the sensors, the control unit, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger seat belt use when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you that the passenger's side airbag has been turned off (see page 30).
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbags, sensors, or seat belt tensioners (see page 29).
- An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off (see page 30).
- Emergency backup power in case your vehicle's electrical system is disconnected in a crash.

Additional Information About Your Airbags

How Your Front Airbags Work



If you ever have a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration.

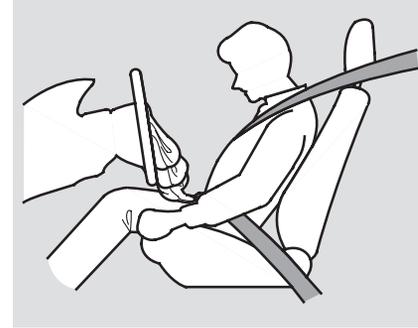
If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will instantly inflate the driver's and front passenger's airbags, at the time and with the force needed.

During a frontal crash, your seat belt restrains your lower body and torso, and the front airbag helps protect your head and chest.

Although both airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy.

This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

Only the driver's airbag can deploy if there is no passenger in the front seat, or if the advanced airbag system has turned the passenger's airbag off (see page 26).



After inflating, the front airbags immediately deflate, so they won't interfere with the driver's visibility, or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

Additional Information About Your Airbags

The total time for inflation and deflation is one-tenth of a second, so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in their laps.

After a crash, you may see what looks like smoke. This is actually powder from the airbag's surface. Although the powder is not harmful, people with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Dual-Stage Airbags

Your front airbags are dual-stage airbags. This means they have two inflation stages that can be ignited sequentially or simultaneously, depending on crash severity.

In a ***more severe*** crash, both stages will ignite simultaneously to provide the quickest and greatest protection.

In a ***less severe*** crash, one stage will ignite first, then the second stage will ignite a split second later. This provides longer airbag inflation time with a little less force.

Dual-Threshold Airbags

Your front airbags are also dual-threshold airbags. Airbags with this feature have two deployment thresholds that depend on whether sensors detect the occupant is wearing a seat belt or not.

If the occupant's belt is ***not latched***, the airbag will deploy at a slightly lower threshold, because the occupant would need extra protection.

If the occupant's belt is ***latched***, the airbag will inflate at a slightly higher threshold, when the airbag would be needed to supplement the protection provided by the seat belt.

CONTINUED

Additional Information About Your Airbags

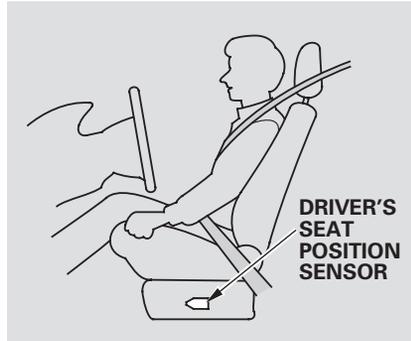
Advanced Airbags

Your front airbags are also advanced airbags. The main purpose of this feature is to help prevent airbag-caused injuries to short drivers and children who ride in front.

For both advanced airbags to work properly:

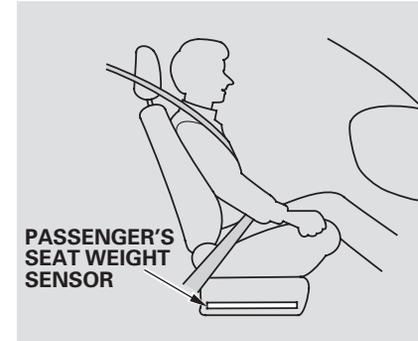
- Occupants must sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not spill any liquids on or under the seats, cover the sensors, or put any cargo or metal objects under the front seats.
- Back-seat passengers should not put their feet under the front seats.

Failure to follow these instructions could damage the sensors or prevent them from working properly.



The driver's advanced front airbag system includes a seat position sensor under the seat. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force, regardless of the severity of the impact.

If there is a problem with the sensor, the SRS indicator will come on, and the airbag will inflate in the normal manner regardless of the driver's seating position.



The passenger's advanced front airbag system has weight sensors under the seat. Although Acura does not encourage carrying an infant or small child in front, if the sensors detect the weight of an infant or small child (up to about 65 lbs or 29 kg), the system will automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off.

Additional Information About Your Airbags

Be aware that objects placed on the passenger's seat can also cause the airbag to be turned off.

When the airbag is turned off, a "passenger airbag off" indicator in the center of the dashboard comes on (see page 30).

If the weight sensors detect there is no passenger in the front seat, the airbag will be off. However, the passenger airbag off indicator will not come on.

To ensure that the passenger's advanced front airbag system will work properly, **do not do anything that would increase or decrease the weight on the front passenger's seat.** This includes:

- A rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.

- Moving the front seat or seat-back forcibly back against cargo on the seat or floor behind it.
- Hanging heavy items on the front passenger seat, or placing heavy items in the seat-back pocket.

Also, make sure the floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is hooked to the floor mat anchor (see page 300). If it is not, the mat may interfere with the proper operation of the sensors and operation of the seat.

How Your Side Airbags Work



If you ever have a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate either the driver's or the passenger's side airbag and activate the seat belt tensioner on that side of the vehicle.

Driver and Passenger Safety

CONTINUED

Additional Information About Your Airbags

Only one airbag will deploy during a side impact. If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side airbag will deploy even if there is no passenger.

To get the best protection from the side airbags, front seat occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Side Airbag Cutoff System

Your vehicle has a side airbag cutoff system designed primarily to protect a child riding in the front passenger's seat.

Although Acura does not encourage children to ride in front, if the sensors in the seat detect a child has leaned into the side airbag's deployment path, the airbag will shut off.

The side airbag may also shut off if a short adult leans sideways, or a larger adult slouches and leans sideways into the airbag's deployment path.

Objects placed on the front passenger seat can also cause the side airbag to be shut off.

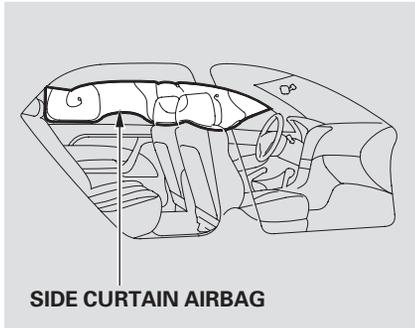
If the side airbag off indicator comes on (see page 30), have the passenger sit upright. Once the passenger is out of the airbag's deployment path, the system will turn the airbag back on, and the indicator will go out.

There will be some delay between the moment the passenger moves into or out of the airbag deployment path and when the indicator comes on or goes off.

A front seat passenger should not use a cushion or other object as a backrest. It may prevent the cutoff system from working properly.

Additional Information About Your Airbags

How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work



In a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid deceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate the side curtain airbag on the driver's or the passenger's side of the vehicle.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag will inflate even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

How the SRS Indicator Works



The SRS indicator alerts you to a potential problem with your airbags or seat belt tensioners.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, this indicator comes on briefly then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, you should have the system checked by your dealer. For example:

- If the SRS indicator does not come on after you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
- If the indicator stays on after the engine starts.

CONTINUED

Additional Information About Your Airbags

- If the indicator comes on or flashes on and off while you drive.

If you see any of these indications, the airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when you need them.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Works

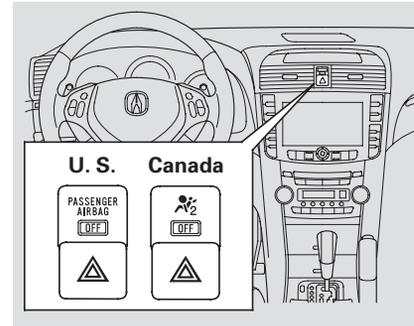
U. S. Canada



This indicator alerts you that the passenger's side airbag has been automatically shut off. It does **not** mean there is a problem with your side airbags.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the indicator should come on briefly and then go off (see page 60). If it doesn't come on, stays on, or comes on while driving without a passenger in the front seat, have the system checked.

How the Passenger Airbag Off Indicator Works



This indicator alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been shut off because weight sensors detect about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child) on the front passenger's seat. It does **not mean** there is a problem with the airbag.

Additional Information About Your Airbags

Be aware that objects placed on the front seat can cause the indicator to come on.

If no weight is detected on the front seat, the airbag will be automatically shut off. However, the indicator will not come on.

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and off repeatedly if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.

If an adult or teenage passenger is riding in front, move the seat as far to the rear as possible, and have the passenger sit upright and wear the seat belt properly.

If the indicator comes on with no front seat passenger and no objects on the seat, or with an adult riding there, something may be interfering with the weight sensors. Look for and remove:

- Any items under the front passenger's seat.
- Any object hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.

If no obstructions are found, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Airbag Service

Your airbag systems are virtually maintenance free, and there are no parts you can safely service. However, you must have your vehicle serviced if:

- **An airbag ever inflates.** Any airbag that has deployed must be replaced along with the control unit and other related parts. Any seat belt tensioner that activates must also be replaced.

Do not try to remove or replace any airbag by yourself. This must be done by an authorized dealer or a knowledgeable body shop.

- **The SRS indicator alerts you to a problem.** Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible. If you ignore this indication, your airbags may not operate properly.

CONTINUED

Additional Information About Your Airbags

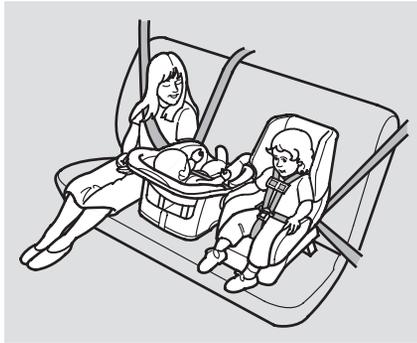
- ***If your vehicle has a moderate to severe impact.*** Even if your airbags do not inflate, your dealer should inspect the driver's seat position sensor and the front passenger's weight sensors to make sure they are operating properly.

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags.*** Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.
- ***Do not tamper with airbag components or wiring for any reason.*** Tampering could cause the airbags to deploy, possibly causing very serious injury.
- ***Do not expose the front passenger's seat-back to liquid.*** If water or another liquid soaks into a seat-back, it can prevent the side airbag cutoff system from working properly.

- ***Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting your dealer.*** This could make the driver's seat position sensor or the front passenger's weight sensors ineffective. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, first contact Acura Client Services at 800-382-2238.
- ***Do not cover or replace front seat-back covers without consulting your dealer.*** Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from inflating during a side impact.

Protecting Children – General Guidelines



Children depend on adults to protect them. However, despite their best intentions, many adults do not know how to *properly* protect child passengers.

If you have children, or ever need to drive with a child in your vehicle, be sure to read this section. It begins with important general guidelines, then presents special information for infants, small children, and larger children.

All Children Must Be Restrained
Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle accidents are the number one cause of the death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state and Canadian province requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Infants and small children must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle (see pages 38 – 47).

⚠ WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt and use a booster seat if necessary.

Larger children must be restrained with a lap/shoulder belt and ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits them properly (see pages 48 – 51).

Protecting Children – General Guidelines

All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat

According to accident statistics, children of all ages and sizes are safer when they are restrained in a back seat. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat.

Some states have laws restricting where children may ride.

Children who ride in the back are less likely to be injured by striking interior vehicle parts during a collision or hard braking. Also, children cannot be injured by an inflating front airbag when they ride in the back.

The Passenger's Front Airbag Can Pose Serious Risks

Front airbags have been designed to help protect adults in a moderate to severe frontal collision. To do this, the passenger's front airbag is quite large, and it can inflate with enough force to cause very serious injuries.

Even though your vehicle has an advanced front airbag system that automatically turns the passenger's front airbag off (see page 30), please follow these guidelines:

Infants

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag. If the airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or very seriously injure an infant.

Small Children

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag can be hazardous. If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a small child.

Larger Children

Children who have outgrown child seats are also at risk of being injured or killed by an inflating passenger's front airbag. Whenever possible, larger children should sit in the back seat, on a booster seat if needed, and be properly restrained with a seat belt (see page 48 for important information about protecting larger children).

Protecting Children – General Guidelines

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards, and that children must be properly restrained in a back seat, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

U.S. Models

SUN VISOR



Canadian Models

SUN VISOR

<p>CAUTION TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES, YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT. • DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEATS IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION. • DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG. • DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOURSELF. • SEE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS. 	<p>PRECAUTIONS:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • POUR EVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES: POUR PROFITER D'UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D'UNE COLLISION BOUCLEZ TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SECURITE. • N'INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIEGE POUR ENFANTS FAISANT FACE A L'ARRIERE SUR LE SIEGE DU PASSAGER AVANT. • NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSOYEZ PAS PRES DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE. • NE DEPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE ET VOUS. • LISEZ LE GUIDE UTILISATEUR POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS.
--	--

DASHBOARD

This Vehicle is Equipped with Advanced Air Bags

Even with Advanced Air Bags

Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag. The back seat is the safest place for children. Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. Always use seat belts and child restraints. See owner's manual for more information about air bags.

To be removed by owner only.

Driver and Passenger Safety

Protecting Children – General Guidelines

If You Must Drive with Several Children

Your vehicle has a back seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Place the largest child in the front seat, provided the child is large enough to wear the lap/shoulder belt properly (see page 48).
- Move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible (see page 103).
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat (see page 16).
- Make sure the seat belt is properly positioned and secured (see page 14).

If a Child Requires Close Attention

Many parents say they prefer to put an infant or a small child in the front passenger seat so they can watch the child, or because the child requires attention.

Placing a child in the front seat exposes the child to hazards in a frontal collision, and paying close attention to a child distracts the driver from the important tasks of driving, placing both of you at risk.

If a child requires close physical attention or frequent visual contact, we strongly recommend that another adult ride with the child in the back seat. The back seat is far safer for a child than the front.

Protecting Children – General Guidelines

Additional Safety Precautions

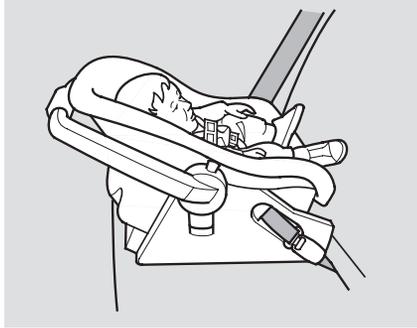
- **Never hold an infant or child on your lap.** If you are not wearing a seat belt in a crash, you could be thrown forward and crush the child against the dashboard or a seat-back. If you are wearing a seat belt, the child can be torn from your arms and be seriously hurt or killed.
- **Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child.** During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- **Never let two children use the same seat belt.** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- **Use childproof door locks to prevent children from opening the doors.** This can prevent children from accidentally falling out (see page 98).

- **Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.** If a child wraps a loose seat belt around their neck, they can be seriously or fatally injured. (See pages 45 and 46 for how to activate and deactivate the lockable retractor.)
- **Do not leave children alone in a vehicle.** Leaving children without adult supervision is illegal in most states and Canadian provinces, and can be very hazardous. For example, infants and small children left in a vehicle on a hot day can die from heatstroke. A child left alone with the key in the ignition switch can accidentally set the vehicle in motion, possibly injuring themselves or others.

- **Lock all doors and the trunk when your vehicle is not in use.** Children who play in vehicles can accidentally get trapped inside. Teach your children not to play in or around vehicles. Know how to operate the emergency trunk opener and decide if your children should be shown how to use this feature (see page 98).
- **Keep vehicle keys and remote transmitters out of the reach of children.** Even very young children learn how to unlock vehicle doors, turn on the ignition switch, and open the trunk, which can lead to accidental injury or death.

Protecting Infants and Small Children

Protecting Infants



Child Seat Type

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the child reaches the seat maker's weight or height limit for the seat, and the child is at least one year old.

Only a rear-facing child seat provides proper support for a baby's head, neck, and back.

Two types of seats may be used: a seat designed exclusively for infants, or a convertible seat used in the rear-facing, reclining mode.

Do not put a rear-facing child seat in a forward-facing position. If placed facing forward, an infant could be very seriously injured during a frontal collision.

Rear-facing Child Seat Placement

A rear-facing child seat can be placed in any seating position in the back seat, but not in the front. ***Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat.***

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or seriously injure an infant.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat as far back as recommended, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

Protecting Infants and Small Children

In any of these situations, we strongly recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a collision.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the back seat, not the front.

Protecting Small Children



Child Seat Type

A child who is at least one year old, and who fits within the child seat maker's weight and height limits, should be restrained in a forward-facing, upright child seat.

Of the different seats available, we recommend those that have a five-point harness system as shown.

We also recommend that a small child use the child seat until the child reaches the weight or height limit for the seat.

Child Seat Placement

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a back seat, not the front.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's airbag can be hazardous. If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating airbag can strike the child with enough force to cause very serious or fatal injuries.

Even with advanced front airbags, which can automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off (see page 26), a back seat is the safest place for a small child.

CONTINUED

Protecting Infants and Small Children

If it is necessary to put a forward-facing child seat in the front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, and be sure the child seat is firmly secured to the vehicle and the child is properly strapped in the seat.

⚠ WARNING

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Selecting a Child Seat

When buying a child seat, you need to choose either a conventional child seat, or one designed for use with the lower anchors and tethers for children (LATCH) system.

Conventional child seats must be secured to a vehicle with a seat belt, whereas LATCH-compatible seats are secured by attaching the seat to hardware built into the two outer rear seats.

Since LATCH-compatible child seats are easier to install and reduce the possibility of improper installation, we recommend selecting this style.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed using a seat belt.

Whatever type of seat you choose, to provide proper protection, a child seat should meet three requirements:

1. The child seat should meet U.S. or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213. Look for FMVSS 213 or CMVSS 213 on the box.

2. The child seat should be of the proper type and size to fit the child.

Rear-facing for infants, forward-facing for small children.

3. The child seat should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.

Before purchasing a conventional child seat, or using a previously purchased one, we recommend that you test the seat in the specific vehicle seating position or positions where the seat will be used.

Installing a Child Seat

After selecting a proper child seat and a good place to install the seat, there are three main steps in installing the seat:

- 1. Properly secure the child seat to the vehicle.** All child seats must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the LATCH (lower anchors and tethers for children) system. A child whose seat is not properly secured to the vehicle can be endangered in a crash.
- 2. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured.** After installing a child seat, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

A child seat secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, it does not need to be “rock solid.” Some side-to-side movement can be expected and should not reduce the child seat’s effectiveness.

If the child seat is not secure, try installing it in a different seating position, or use a different style of child seat that can be firmly secured.

- 3. Secure the child in the child seat.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child seat according to the child seat maker’s instructions. A child who is not properly secured in a child seat can be seriously injured in a crash.

The following pages provide guidelines on how to properly install a child seat. A forward-facing child seat is used in all examples, but the instructions are the same for a rear-facing child seat.

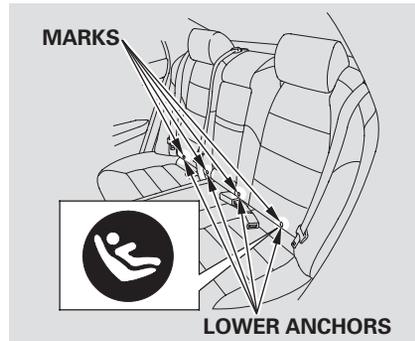
Installing a Child Seat

Installing a Child Seat with LATCH

Your vehicle is equipped with LATCH (lower anchors and tethers for children) at the outer rear seats.

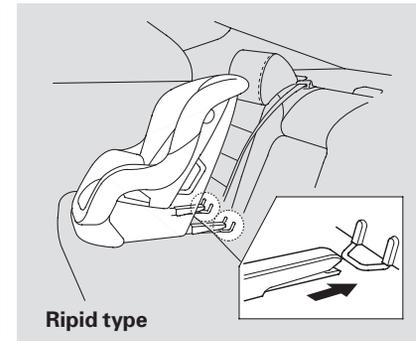
The lower anchors are located between the seat-back and seat bottom, and are to be used only with a child seat designed for use with LATCH.

The location of each lower anchor is indicated with a small button above the anchor point.



To install a LATCH-compatible child seat:

1. Move the seat belt buckle or tongue away from the lower anchors.
2. Make sure there are no objects near the anchors that could prevent a secure connection between the child seat and the anchors.

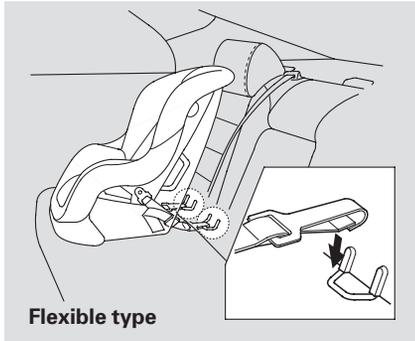


3. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the lower anchors according to the child seat maker's instructions.

Some LATCH-compatible seats have a rigid-type connector as shown above.

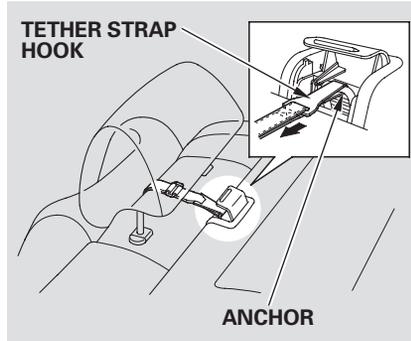
CONTINUED

Installing a Child Seat



Other LATCH-compatible seats have a flexible-type connector as shown above.

4. Whatever type you have, follow the child seat maker's instructions for adjusting or tightening the fit.



5. Lift the head restraint (see page 104), then route the tether strap through the legs of the head restraint and over the seat-back, making sure the strap is not twisted.
6. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor, then tighten the strap as instructed by the child seat maker.

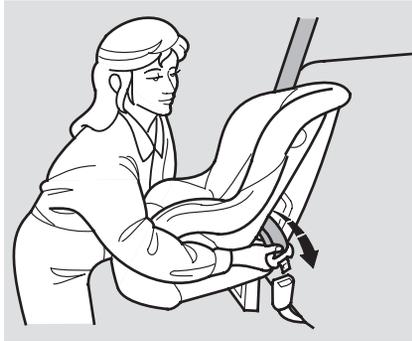
7. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

Installing a Child Seat

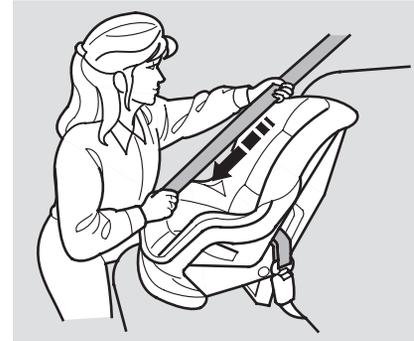
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Belt

When not using the LATCH system, all child seats must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.

In addition, the lap/shoulder belts in all seating positions except the driver's have a lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child seat.



1. With the child seat in the desired seating position, route the belt through the child seat according to the seat maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle.



2. To activate the lockable retractor, slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops, then let the belt feed back into the retractor.

3. After the belt has retracted, tug on it. If the belt is locked, you will not be able to pull it out. If you can pull the belt out, it is not locked, and you will need to repeat these steps.

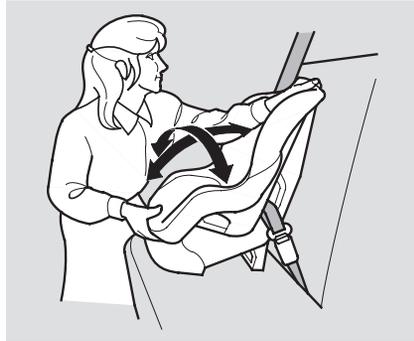
CONTINUED

Installing a Child Seat



4. After confirming that the belt is locked, grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt. Remember, if the lap part of the belt is not tight, the child seat will not be secure.

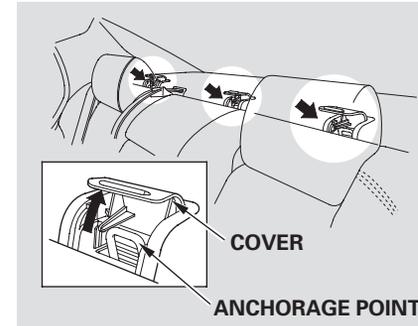
To remove slack, it may help to put weight on the child seat, or push on the back of the seat while pulling up on the belt.



5. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving maneuvers. If the child seat is not secure, unlatch the belt, allow it to retract fully, then repeat these steps.

To deactivate the lockable retractor and remove a child seat, unlatch the buckle, unrout the seat belt, and let the belt fully retract.

Installing a Child Seat with a Tether

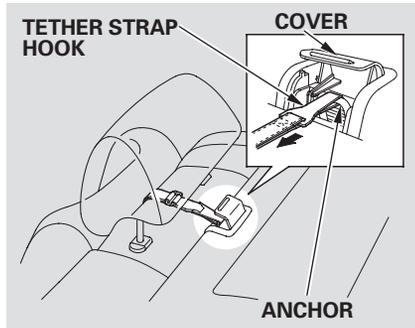


A child seat with a tether can be installed in any seating position in the back seat, using one of the anchorage points shown above.

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is required or available.

Installing a Child Seat

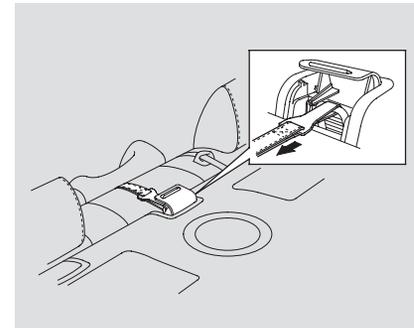
Using an Outer Anchor



1. After properly securing the child seat (see page 45), lift the head restraint, then route the tether strap over the seat-back and through the legs of the head restraint.

2. Lift the anchor cover, then attach the tether strap hook to the anchor, making sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Tighten the strap according to the seat maker's instructions.

Using the Center Anchor



1. After properly securing the child seat (see page 45), route the tether strap over the top of the seat-back.
2. Follow steps 2 and 3 in the previous column.

Protecting Larger Children

When a child reaches the recommended weight or height limit for a forward-facing child seat, the child should sit in a back seat on a booster seat and wear a lap/shoulder belt.

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, use a booster seat if needed, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly.

Checking Seat Belt Fit



To determine if a lap/shoulder belt properly fits a child, have the child put on the seat belt, then ask yourself:

1. Does the child sit all the way back against the seat?
2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?

Protecting Larger Children

3. Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
5. Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat.

Using a Booster Seat



A child who has outgrown a forward-facing child seat should ride in a back seat and use a booster seat until the lap/shoulder belt fits them properly without the booster.

Some states and Canadian provinces also require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g., 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the states or provinces where you intend to drive.

Booster seats can be high-back or low-back. Whichever style you select, make sure the booster seat meets federal safety standards (see page 34) and that you follow the booster seat maker's instructions.

If a child who uses a booster seat must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible and be sure the child is wearing the seat belt properly.

CONTINUED

Protecting Larger Children

A child may continue using a booster seat until the tops of their ears are even with the top of the vehicle's or booster's seat-back. A child of this height should be tall enough to use the lap/shoulder belt without a booster seat.

When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in the back seat.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates in a moderate to severe frontal collision, the airbag can cause serious injuries to a child who is unrestrained, improperly restrained, sitting too close to the airbag, or out of position.

A side airbag also poses risks. If any part of a larger child's body is in the path of a deploying side airbag, the child could receive possibly serious injuries.

Of course, children vary widely. And while age may be one indicator of when a child can safely ride in front, there are other important factors you should consider.

Physical Size

Physically, a child must be large enough for the lap/shoulder belt to properly fit (see pages 14 and 48). If the seat belt does not fit properly, with or without the child sitting on a booster seat, the child should not sit in front.

Maturity

To safely ride in front, a child must be able to follow the rules, including sitting properly, and wearing the seat belt properly throughout the ride.

Protecting Larger Children

If you decide that a child can safely ride up front, be sure to:

- Carefully read the owner's manual, and make sure you understand all seat belt instructions and all safety information.
- Move the vehicle seat to the rear-most position.
- Have the child sit up straight, back against the seat, and feet on or near the floor.
- Check that the child's seat belt is properly and securely positioned.
- Supervise the child. Even mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten the seat belts or sit properly.

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Do not let a child wear a seat belt across the neck.*** This could result in serious neck injuries during a crash.
- ***Do not let a child put the shoulder part of a seat belt behind the back or under the arm.*** This could cause very serious injuries during a crash. It also increases the chance that the child will slide under the belt in a crash and be injured.
- ***Two children should never use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.

- ***Do not put any accessories on a seat belt.*** Devices intended to improve a child's comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can make the belt less effective and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

Carbon Monoxide Hazard

Your vehicle's exhaust contains carbon monoxide gas. Carbon monoxide should not enter the vehicle in normal driving if you maintain your vehicle properly and follow the information on this page.

Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever:

- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.
- You notice a change in the sound of the exhaust.
- The vehicle was in an accident that may have damaged the underside.

⚠ WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

High levels of carbon monoxide can collect rapidly in enclosed areas, such as a garage. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even with the door open, run the engine only long enough to move the vehicle out of the garage.

With the trunk lid open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into your vehicle's interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the trunk open, open all the windows, and set the climate control system as shown below.

If you must sit in your parked vehicle, even in an unconfined area, with the engine running, adjust the climate control system as follows:

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Safety Labels

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that could cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact your dealer for a replacement.

HOOD
U.S. models

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)
This vehicle is equipped with front air bags, side air bags in the front seats, rear outboard inner seats, and side curtain air bags. All SRS electrical wiring and connectors are colored yellow. Tampering with, disconnecting or using test equipment on the SRS wiring can make the system inoperative or cause accidental deployment.

▲ WARNING

Accidental deployment can seriously hurt or kill you. Follow Service Manual instructions carefully.

Canadian models

<p>SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS) This vehicle is equipped with front air bags, side air bags in the front seats, front outboard inner seats, and side curtain air bags. All SRS electrical wiring and connectors are colored yellow. Tampering with, disconnecting or using test equipment on the SRS wiring can make the system inoperative or cause accidental deployment.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">▲ WARNING</p> <p>Accidental deployment can seriously hurt or kill you. Follow Service Manual instructions carefully.</p>	<p>SYSTEME DE RETIENNE SUPPLEMENTAIRE (SRS) Cet véhicule est équipé de ceintures de retenne supplémentaires, ceintures de retenne latérales et de ceintures de retenne latérales de type rideau et d'airbags de retenne latéraux et d'airbags de retenne latéraux de type rideau. Tous les câbles électriques et connecteurs du système SRS sont jaunes. L'altération ou le débranchement des fils du système SRS ou l'usage d'équipement de test sur les circuits peuvent rendre le système inopérant ou entraîner un déploiement accidentel.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">▲ ATTENTION</p> <p>Un déploiement accidentel risque de causer graves blessures, ou la mort. Suivez attentivement les instructions du manuel de réparation.</p>
--	--

RADIATOR CAP



DASHBOARD

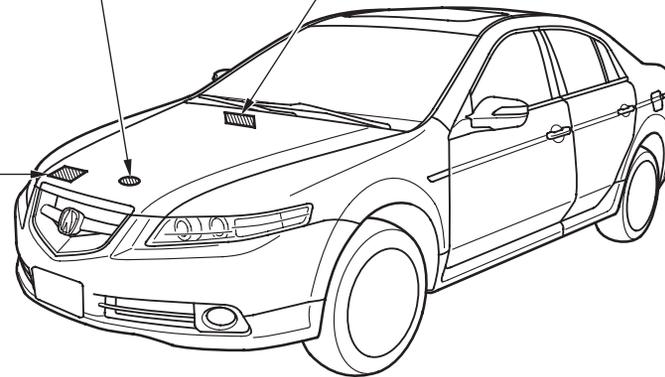
U.S. models only

This Vehicle is Equipped with Advanced Air Bags

Even with Advanced Air Bags

Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag. The back seat is the safest place for children. Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. Always use seat belts and child restraints. See owner's manual for more information about air bags.

To be removed by owner only.



CONTINUED

Safety Labels

SUN VISOR

U.S. models

▲ WARNING

EVEN WITH ADVANCED AIR BAGS

- Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag
- The back seat is the safest place for children
- Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front
- Always use seat belts and child restraints
- See owner's manual for more information about air bags

Canadian models

<p>CAUTION</p> <p>TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES, YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT. • DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEATS IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION. • DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG. • DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOURSELF. • SEE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS. 	<p>PRÉCAUTION:</p> <p>POUR ÉVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • POUR PROFITER D'UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D'UNE COLLISION BOUCLEZ TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SÉCURITÉ. • N'INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIÈGE POUR ENFANTS FAISANT FACE À L'ARRIÈRE SUR LE SIÈGE DU PASSAGER AVANT. • NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSEYEZ PAS PRÈS DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE. • NE DÉPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE ET VOUS. • LISEZ LE GUIDE UTILISATEUR POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS.
--	---

DOORJAMB

U.S. models

SIDE AIRBAG

- This car is equipped with side airbags in the front seats and side curtain airbags.
- Do not lean against the door.
- See owner's manual for more information.

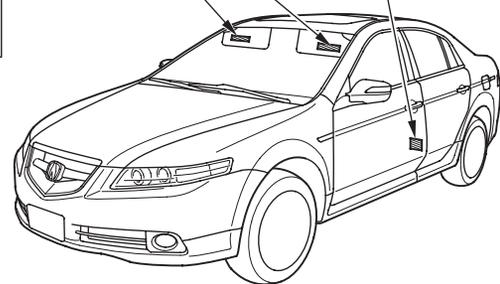
Canadian models

SIDE AIRBAG

- This car is equipped with side airbags in the front seats and side curtain airbags.
- Do not lean against the door.
- See owner's manual for more information.

COUSSIN GONFLABLE LATÉRAL

- Cette automobile est équipée de coussins gonflables latéraux dans les sièges avant ainsi que de coussins gonflables latéraux de type rideau.
- Ne vous appuyez pas sur la porte.
- Consultez le Manuel du propriétaire pour en savoir plus.

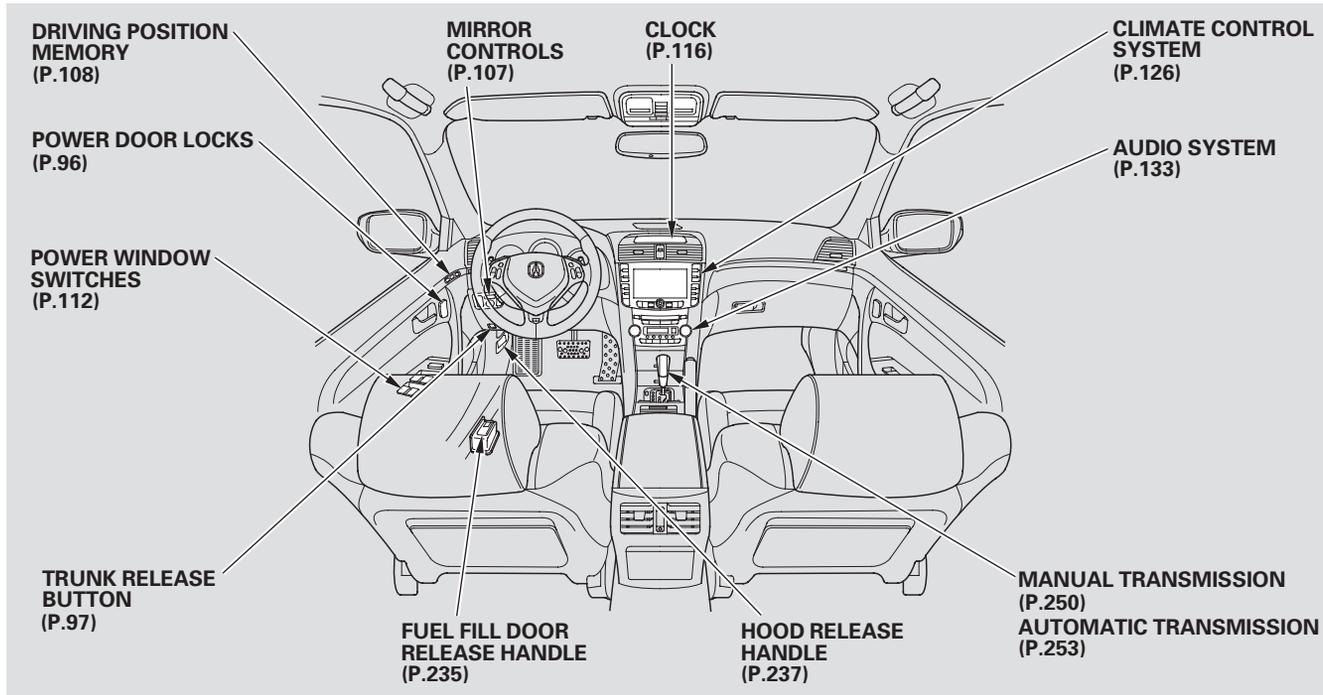


Instruments and Controls

This section gives information about the controls and displays that contribute to the daily operation of your vehicle. All the essential controls are within easy reach.

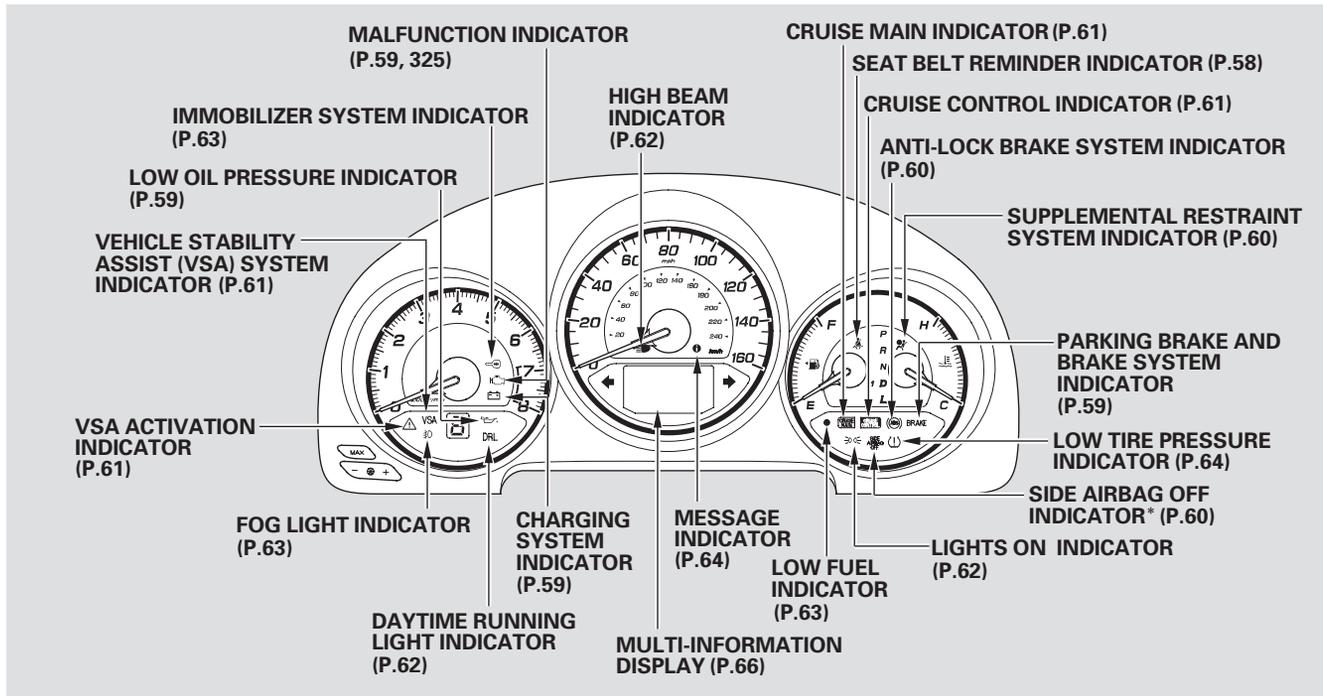
Control Locations	56	Seats	103
Instrument Panel	57	Trunk Pass-through Cover	105
Instrument Panel Indicators.....	58	Mirrors	106
Gauges	65	Driving Position Memory	
Temperature Gauge	65	System.....	108
Fuel Gauge	65	Seat Heaters	111
Multi-Information Display	66	Power Windows	112
Controls Near Steering Wheel.....	84	Moonroof	115
Windshield Wipers and Washers ..	85	Clock	116
Turn Signal and Headlights.....	86	Parking Brake	117
Automatic Lighting Off		Interior Lights	118
Feature	88	Interior Convenience Items.....	119
Daytime Running Lights.....	88	Beverage Holders.....	120
Fog Lights.....	89	Accessory Power Sockets.....	120
Instrument Panel Brightness	89	Glove Box	121
Hazard Warning Button.....	90	Console Compartment	121
Rear Window Defogger	90	Coin Holder	122
Steering Wheel Adjustment	91	Front Door Pockets.....	122
Keys.....	92	Vanity Mirror	123
Immobilizer System.....	94	Sun Visor	123
Ignition Switch	95		
Door Locks	96		
Trunk.....	97		
Emergency Trunk Opener	98		
Childproof Door Locks	98		
Remote Transmitter	99		

Control Locations



Vehicle with navigation system shown

Instrument Panel



Instruments and Controls

* : The U.S. instrument panel is shown. Differences for the Canadian models are noted in the text.

Instrument Panel Indicators

The instrument panel has many indicators to give you important information about your vehicle.



Seat Belt Reminder Indicator

This indicator reminds you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before fastening your seat belts, the beeper sounds, and the indicator flashes. If you do not fasten your seat belts before the beeper stops, the indicator stops flashing but remains on.

If your front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator comes on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position.

If you continue driving without fastening your seat belt, the beeper sounds and the indicator flashes again at regular intervals, and you will also see a “FASTEN SEAT BELT” or “FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT” message on the multi-information display (see page 68).

For more information, see page 18 .

Instrument Panel Indicators



Low Oil Pressure Indicator

The engine can be severely damaged if this indicator flashes or stays on when the engine is running. For more information, see page 324.



Charging System Indicator

If this indicator comes on when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged. For more information, see page 324.



Malfunction Indicator Lamp

See page 325.

U.S. Canada Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator

This indicator has two functions:

1. This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It is a reminder to check the parking brake. A beeper sounds if you try to drive with the parking brake not fully released. Driving with the parking brake not fully released can damage the brakes and tires.

If you drive without releasing the parking brake, a beeper will sound, and you will also see a “RELEASE PARKING BRAKE” message on the multi-information display (see page 68).

2. If it stays on after you have fully released the parking brake while the engine is running, or if it comes on while driving, it can indicate a problem in the brake system. For more information, see page 326.

Instrument Panel Indicators



Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS. If this happens, have your vehicle checked at a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. For more information, see page 262 .



Supplemental Restraint System Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates a potential problem with your front airbags. This indicator will also alert you to a potential problem with your side airbags, passenger's side airbag automatic cutoff system, side curtain airbags, automatic seat belt tensioners, driver's seat position sensor, or the front passenger's weight sensors. For more information, see page 29 .



Side Airbag Off Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates that the passenger's side airbag has automatically shut off. For more information, see page 30 .

Instrument Panel Indicators

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If it comes on and stays on at any other time, or if it does not come on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, there is a problem with the VSA system. Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked. Without VSA, your vehicle still has normal driving ability, but will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement. See page 264 for more information on the VSA system.

VSA Activation Indicator

This indicator has three functions:

1. It comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system.
2. It flashes when VSA is active (see page 264).
3. It comes on along with the VSA system indicator if there is a problem with the VSA system.

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. See page 264 for more information on the VSA system.

Cruise Main Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn on the cruise control system by pressing the CRUISE button (see page 184).

Cruise Control Indicator

This indicator comes on when you set the cruise control. See page 184 for information on operating the cruise control.

Instrument Panel Indicators



Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators

The left or right turn signal indicator blinks when you signal a lane change or turn. If an indicator does not blink or blinks rapidly, it usually means one of the turn signal bulbs is burned out (see page 294). Replace the bulb as soon as possible, since other drivers cannot see that you are signaling.

When you press the hazard warning button, both turn signal indicators blink. All turn signals on the outside of the vehicle should flash.



“Daytime Running Lights” Indicator

If this indicator comes on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position and the parking brake is released, it means there is a problem in the circuit. Have your vehicle checked by your dealer.



High Beam Indicator

This indicator comes on with the high beam headlights. See page 86 for information on the headlight controls.



Lights On Indicator

This indicator reminds you that the exterior lights are on. It comes on when the light switch is in either the  or  position. This indicator will also come on when the light switch is in AUTO and the lights turn on automatically. If you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position without turning off the light switch, this indicator will remain on. A reminder chime will also sound when you open the driver’s door.

Instrument Panel Indicators

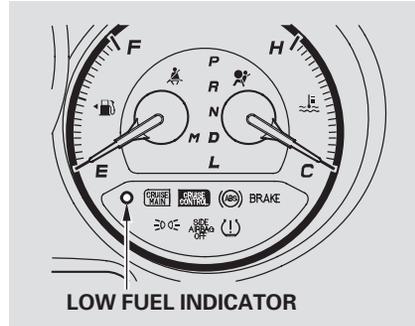


Immobilizer System Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It will then go off if you have inserted a properly-coded ignition key. If it is not a properly-coded key, the indicator will blink, and the engine's fuel system will be disabled. (see page 94).

This indicator also blinks several times when you turn the ignition switch from the ON (II) position to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position.

Low Fuel Indicator



This indicator is in the fuel gauge. It comes on as a reminder that you must refuel soon. When the indicator comes on, there is about 1.2 U.S. gal (4.5 l) of fuel remaining in the tank before the needle reaches E. There is a small reserve of fuel remaining in the tank when the needle does reach E. You will also see a “FUEL LOW” message on the multi-information display (see page 68).



Fog Light Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn on the fog lights. See page 86 for information on fog light operation.

Instrument Panel Indicators



Low Tire Pressure Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on while driving, it means that one or more of your vehicle's tires are extremely low on pressure. You will also see a "CHECK TIRE PRESSURE" message on the multi-information display. The multi-information display will show you which tire has lost the pressure and how much pressure it has lost (see page 268).

If this happens, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, check which tire has lost the pressure on the multi-information display, and determine the cause. If it is because of a flat tire, replace the flat tire with the compact spare (see page 313), and have the flat tire repaired as soon as possible. If two or more tires are underinflated, call a professional towing service. For more information, see page 266.



Message Indicator

This indicator comes on when there is a system message on the multi-information display. Press the INFO button on the steering wheel (see page 66) to see the message (see page 68).

Most of the time, this indicator comes on along with other indicators in the instrument panel such as the seat belt reminder indicator, SRS indicator, VSA system indicator, etc.

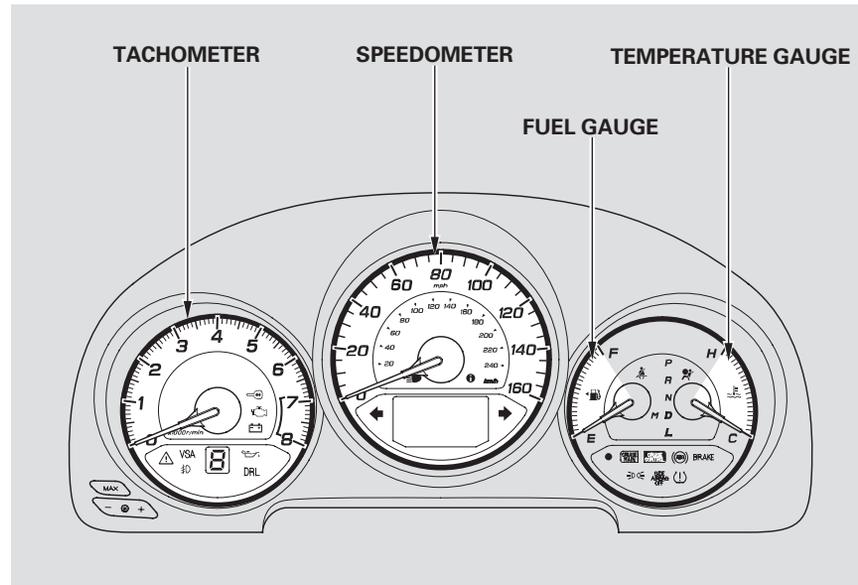
Gauges

Temperature Gauge

This shows the temperature of the engine's coolant. During normal operation, the pointer should rise to about the middle of the gauge. In severe driving conditions, the pointer may rise to the upper zone. If it reaches the red (hot) mark, pull safely to the side of the road. Turn to page 322 for instructions and precautions on checking the engine's cooling system.

Fuel Gauge

This shows how much fuel you have. It may show slightly more or less than the actual amount. Driving uphill or making turns can cause the needle to fluctuate or the low fuel indicator to come on early. The needle returns to the bottom after you turn off the ignition.



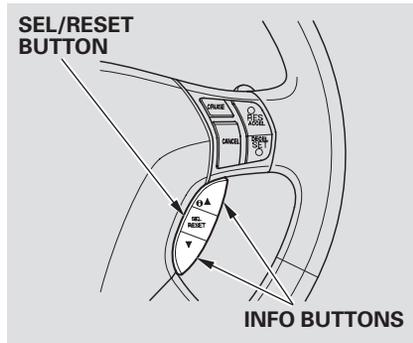
NOTICE

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Multi-Information Display

The multi-information display in the instrument panel displays various information and messages when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position. Some of the messages help you operate your vehicle more comfortably. Others help to keep you aware of the periodic maintenance your vehicle needs for continued trouble-free driving.

When you open the driver's door, a "Welcome" message is shown on the multi-information display.



To change the display, press the INFO (▲/▼) button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the main menu appears (see page 69).

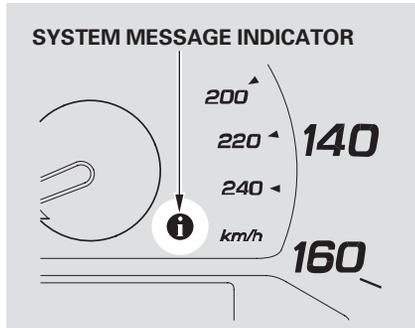
With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, the multi-information display changes as shown on page 69 each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button or SEL/RESET button.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, what you last selected is displayed.

In the multi-information display, the system message is also displayed (see page 68) and you can customize your vehicle control settings (see page 77).

Multi-Information Display

System Messages



If there is a problem with your vehicle, for example, the parking brake is not fully released or a door is not fully closed, the multi-information display will show you the problem. It does this by interrupting the current display with one or more messages.

The system message(s) triggers the appropriate indicator(s) on the instrument panel, including the system message indicator, to come on. The system message indicator does not go off until the problem(s) is corrected.

You will also hear a beep when the system message indicator comes on for the first time.

Most of the messages are displayed for about 5 seconds, and then the normal display returns. If there are several system messages to be shown, the display switches these messages every 5 seconds.

To cancel the message(s) before 5 seconds elapsed, press the INFO (▲/▼) button on the steering wheel.

Even if you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, some messages stay on or come on again at regular intervals until the problem is corrected.

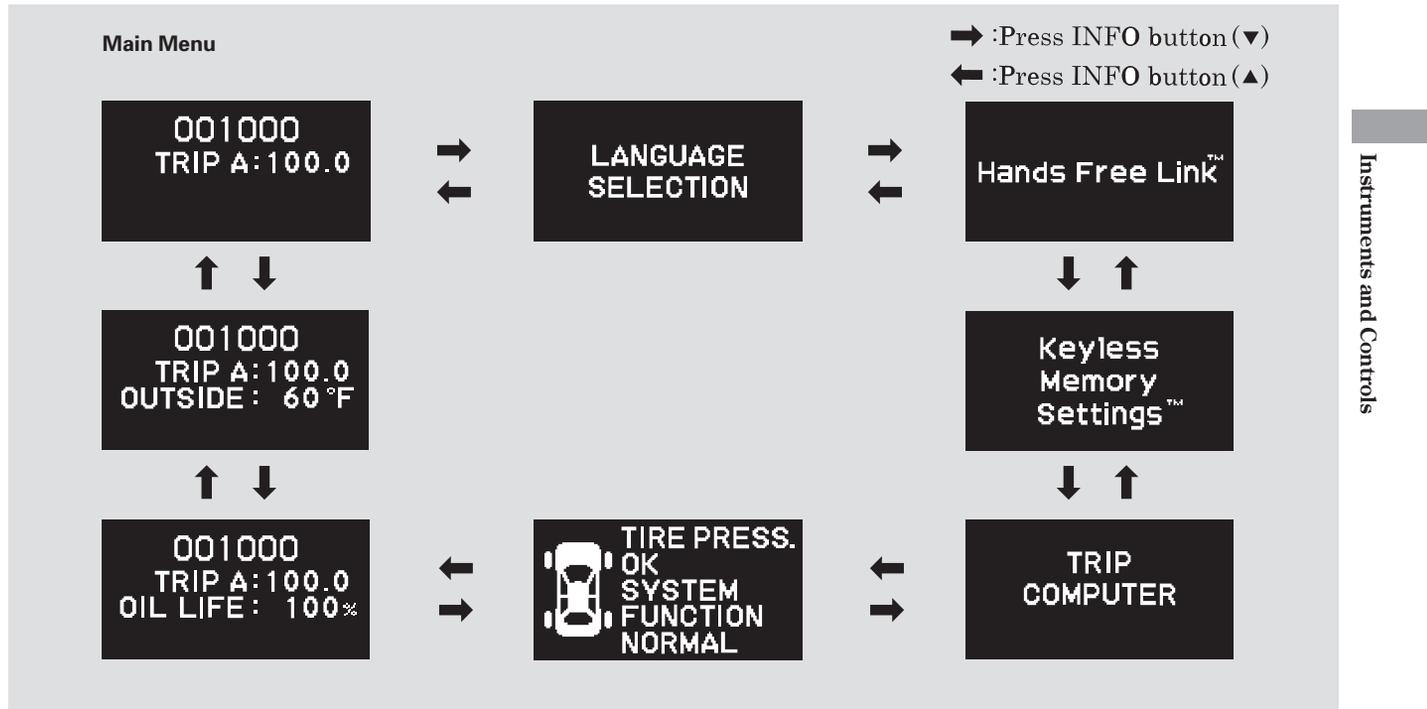
Here is a list of all messages:

CONTINUED

Multi-Information Display

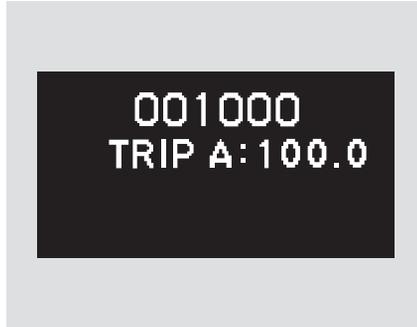
 <p>DOOR AND TRUNK OPEN</p>	See page 11	 <p>CHECK TIRE PRESSURE</p>	See page 268	<p>AT model only</p>  <p>CHECK STARTING SYSTEM</p>	See page 249
 <p>FASTEN SEATBELT</p>	See pages 18, 58	<p>TPMS CHECK TPMS SYSTEM</p>	See page 269	 <p>SERVICE DUE SOON A00000</p>	See page 274
 <p>FASTEN PASSENGER SEATBELT</p>	See pages 18, 58	 <p>TIGHTEN FUEL CAP</p>	See page 236		
<p>U.S.</p>  <p>RELEASE PARKING BRAKE</p>	See page 59	 <p>FUEL LOW</p>	See page 63		
<p>Canada</p>  <p>RELEASE PARKING BRAKE</p>	See page 59	<p>Canada only</p>  <p>WASHER FLUID LOW</p>	See page 287		

Multi-Information Display



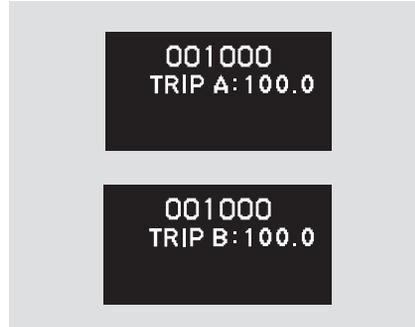
Multi-Information Display

Odometer

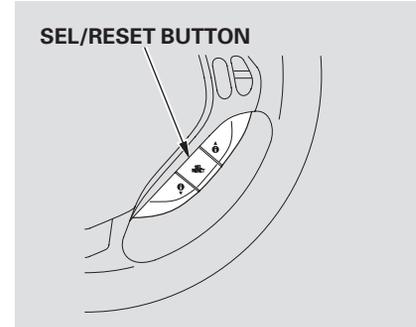


The odometer shows the total distance your vehicle has been driven. It measures miles in U.S. models and kilometers in Canadian models. It is illegal under U.S. federal law and Canadian provincial regulations to disconnect, reset, or alter the odometer with the intent to change the number of miles or kilometers indicated.

Trip Meter



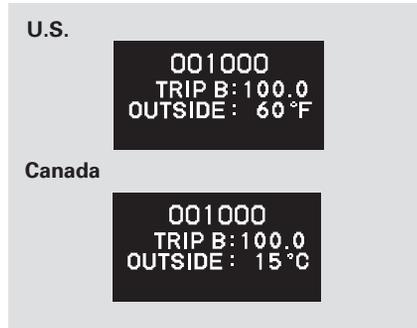
This meter shows the number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since you last reset it. There are two trip meters: Trip A and Trip B. Each trip meter works independently, so you can keep track of two different distances. Switch between Trip A and Trip B by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the number resets to "0.0".

Multi-Information Display

Outside Temperature



This shows the outside Fahrenheit temperature in U.S. models, and Centigrade temperature in Canadian models.

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. The temperature reading can be affected by heat reflection from the road surface, engine heat, and the exhaust from surrounding traffic. This can cause an incorrect temperature reading when your vehicle speed is under 19 mph (30 km/h). When you start your trip, the sensor is not fully acclimatized, therefore it may take several minutes until the proper temperature is displayed.

If the outside temperature is incorrectly displayed, you can adjust it up to $\pm 5^{\circ}\text{F}$ ($\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$) warmer or cooler.

NOTE: The temperature must be stabilized before doing this procedure.

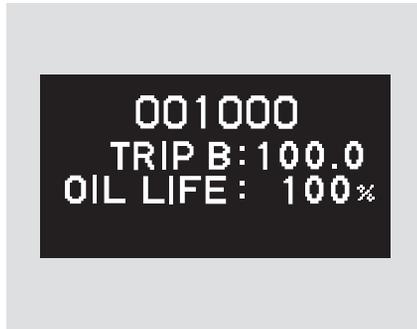
Select the outside temperature display, then press the SEL/RESET button for 10 seconds. The following sequence will appear for 1 second each: 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, -5, -4, -3, -2, -1, 0 (U.S.) or 0, 1, 2, 3, -3, -2, -1, 0 (Canada).

When it reaches the desired value, release the SEL/RESET button. You should see the new outside temperature displayed.

In certain weather conditions, temperature readings near freezing (32°F , 0°C) could mean that ice is forming on the road surface.

Multi-Information Display

Engine Oil Life



This shows the remaining life of the engine oil. It shows 100% after the engine oil is replaced and the display is reset. The engine oil life is calculated based on engine operating conditions and accumulated engine revolutions. For more information, see page 273 .

Language Selection



The language of the multi-information display is selectable. The selectable languages are English, French, and Spanish.

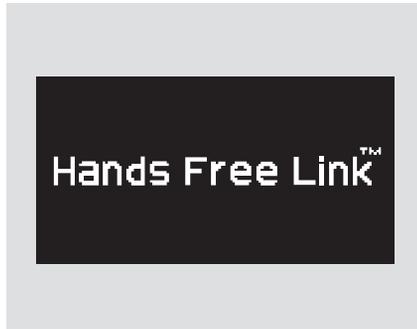


To select a language, display "LANGUAGE SELECTION." Press the SEL/RESET button. The display will change as shown above.

Select the desired language by pressing the INFO (▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

Multi-Information Display

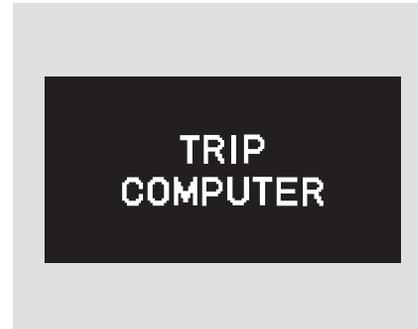
HandsFreeLink™



You can receive or make phone calls from your cell phone through your vehicle's HandsFreeLink (HFL) system without touching your cell phone.

To use the system, your cell phone and the HFL system must be linked. Not all cell phones are compatible with this system. Refer to page 190 for instructions on how to link your cell phone to the HFL and how to receive or make phone calls, or visit the handsfreelink.com website.

Trip Computer

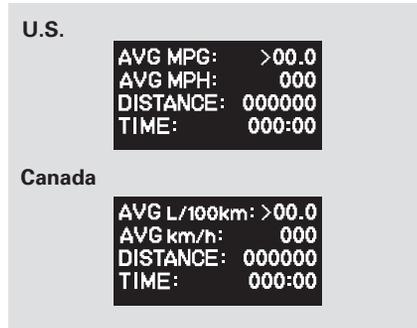


When the multi-information display is in the trip computer mode, pressing the SEL/RESET button changes the display as shown in the next column.

Instruments and Controls

CONTINUED

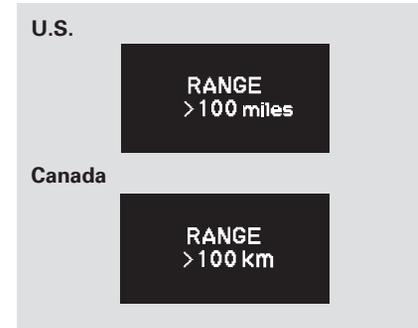
Multi-Information Display



The messages in this display indicate:

- AVG MPG (U.S. models)/AVG L/100 KM (Canadian models): Average fuel economy
- AVG MPH (U.S. models)/AVG km/h (Canadian models): Average vehicle speed
- DISTANCE: Distance traveled
- TIME: Time traveled

To reset the values in the trip computer, press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the values reset.



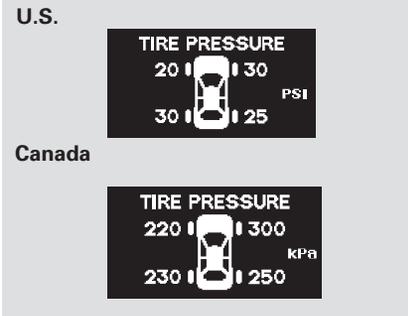
When you press the INFO (▼) button, the display changes as shown above. This is the estimated distance you can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy you received over the last several miles (kilometers), so it will vary with changes in speed, traffic, etc. It measures miles in U.S. models and kilometers in Canadian models.

Multi-Information Display

Tire Pressure Monitor

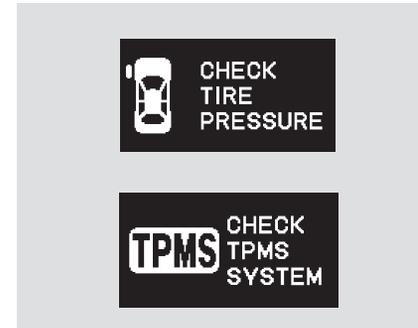


When the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) is functioning normally and the tires are properly inflated, you will see the above display on the multi-information display as it cycles through its main menu.



To see the inflation pressures of all four tires, press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes as shown above.

Each tire pressure is shown in PSI (U.S. models) or in kPa (Canadian models).



If one or more of your vehicle tires are low on pressure, you will see a "CHECK TIRE PRESSURE" message in the display. If there is a problem with the TPMS, you will see a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message.

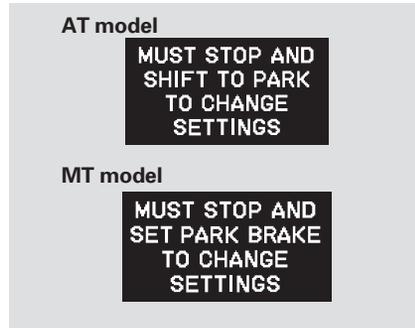
See page 266 through 270 for more information.

Multi-Information Display

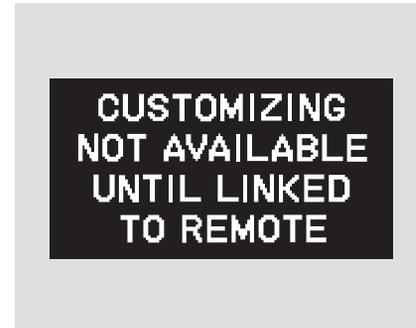
Keyless Memory Settings™



When the main menu displays "Keyless Memory Settings,™" you can customize some of the vehicle control settings to your preference.



To change the settings, the ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position, and the vehicle must be stopped with the transmission in Park (A/T) or the parking brake set (M/T).



You can customize some vehicle control settings for "DRIVER 1" and "DRIVER 2" separately. If "DRIVER 1" or "DRIVER 2" is not displayed, customizing is not possible.

Multi-Information Display

Setup Category	Menu Item	Description	Setting Option	Page
DOOR SETUP	AUTO DOOR LOCK	Changes the setting of when to automatically lock the doors	SHIFT FROM P*	P.79
			WITH VEH SPD**	
			OFF	
	AUTO DOOR UNLOCK (AT)	Changes the setting of when to automatically unlock the driver's/all the doors.	SHIFT TO P**	P.80
			DRIVER DOOR	
			SHIFT TO P	
			ALL DOORS	
			IGN OFF	
	AUTO DOOR UNLOCK (MT)	Changes the setting of when to automatically unlock the driver's/all doors.	DRIVER DOOR	P.80
			IGN OFF	
			ALL DOORS	
	KEY AND REMOTE UNLOCK MODE	Changes which doors unlock with the remote transmitter when the button is first pushed	DRIVER'S DOOR**	P.81
			ALL DOORS	
	KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT	The exterior lights flash each time you press the LOCK or UNLOCK button. A beeper will also sound when you press the LOCK button twice.	BEEP ON**	P.81
			BEEP OFF	

Instruments and Controls

*: Automatic transmission model only

** : Default setting

CONTINUED

Multi-Information Display

Setup Category	Menu Item	Description	Setting Option	Page
DOOR SET UP	SECURITY RELOCK TIMER	Changes how long it takes (in seconds) for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock but do not open the door.	30 sec**	P.81
			60 sec	
			90 sec	
LIGHTING SETUP	HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER	Changes how long (in seconds) the headlights stay on after you close the driver's door.	0 sec	P.82
			15 sec**	
			30 sec	
			60 sec	
	INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME	Changes how long (in seconds) the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	5 sec	P.83
			15 sec**	
30 sec				
DEFAULT ALL		Changes all the customized settings as default.	SET	P.83
			CANCEL	

** : Default setting

Multi-Information Display



To enter the customizing mode, press the SEL/RESET button while “Keyless Memory Setting™” is displayed. The display will change as shown above.

Auto Door Lock

The first Keyless Memory Setting is Auto Door Lock.

There are two (manual transmission) or three (automatic transmission) possible settings:
 OFF: The auto door lock is deactivated all the time.

SHIFT FROM P: The doors will lock whenever you move the shift lever out of P. (Models with automatic transmission.)

On U.S. models

10 mph: The doors will lock when the vehicle speed reaches 10 mph.

On Canadian models

15 km/h: The doors will lock when the vehicle speed reaches 15 km/h.

U.S.
(AT)

AUTO DOOR LOCK
>OFF
SHIFT FROM P
10mph

(MT)

AUTO DOOR LOCK
>OFF
10mph

Canada
(AT)

AUTO DOOR LOCK
>OFF
SHIFT FROM P
15km/h

(MT)

AUTO DOOR LOCK
>OFF
15km/h

Select the desired condition by moving the pointer with the INFO (▼) button and enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

Instruments and Controls

CONTINUED

Multi-Information Display

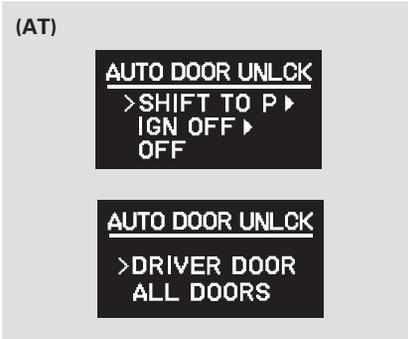
Auto Door Unlock

There are five possible settings for automatic transmission models and three possible settings for manual transmission models.

SHIFT TO P: The driver's door or all doors depending on your selection in the next step, will unlock whenever you move the shift lever to P (Models with automatic transmission).

IGN OFF: The driver's door or all doors unlock when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

OFF: The auto door unlock is deactivated all the time.



On models with automatic transmission
Select the desired condition by moving the pointer with the INFO (▼) button and enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

To designate the door(s) that unlock under the previous step, select "DRVR DR" or "ALL DRS" by moving the pointer with the INFO (▼) button and enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



On models with manual transmission
Select the condition and door(s) to unlock by moving the pointer with INFO (▼) button and enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

Multi-Information Display

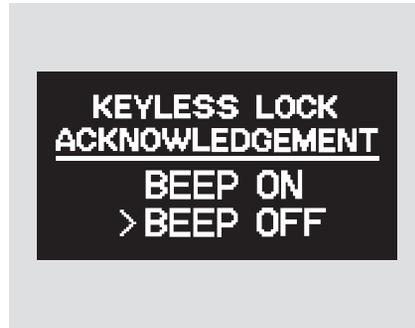
Key and Remote Unlock Mode



You can select whether the driver's door or all the doors unlock when you press the unlock button on the remote transmitter first time.

Select the desired setting "DRIVER DOOR" or "ALL DOORS" by pressing the INFO (▼) button and enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

Keyless Lock Acknowledgment



When you push the LOCK button a second time within 5 seconds after you lock the doors with the remote transmitter, a beeper will sound to verify that doors are locked and the security system has set.

If you do not want the beeper to sound, select "BEEP OFF" with the INFO (▼) button and enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

Security Relock Timer

If you unlock the doors with the remote transmitter, but do not open any of the doors within 30 seconds, the doors automatically relock and the security system sets.

You can change this relock time from 30 seconds to 60 or 90 seconds.

CONTINUED

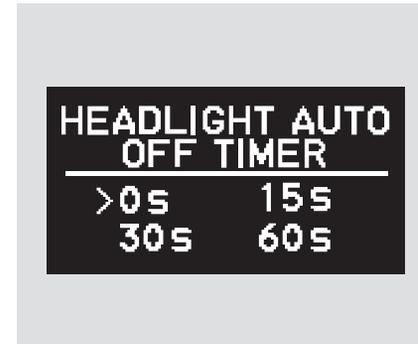
Multi-Information Display



Select the desired relock time by moving the pointer with the INFO (▼) button and enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

Headlight Auto Off Timer
The headlights, parking lights, side marker lights, taillights, and license plate lights go off after the selected time when you close the driver's door.

You can change how long the lights stay on before they go off as described next.



Select the desired time ("0s, 15s, 30s or 60s") by moving the pointer with the INFO (▼) button and enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

Multi-Information Display

Interior Light Dimming Time



The interior lights fade out when you close all doors (see page 118). Select how long it takes for the interior lights to fade out (in seconds) from “5s, 15s, or 30s” by moving the pointer with the INFO (▼) button.

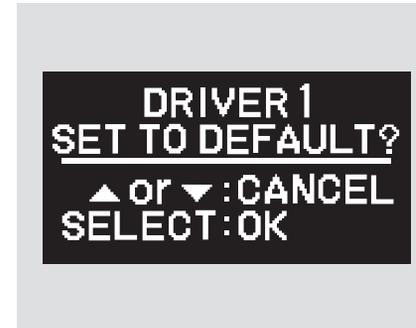
Enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

Default All



If you want the settings as they were when the vehicle left the factory, display the menu shown above. Select “DEFAULT ALL” by moving the pointer with the INFO (▼) button and enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

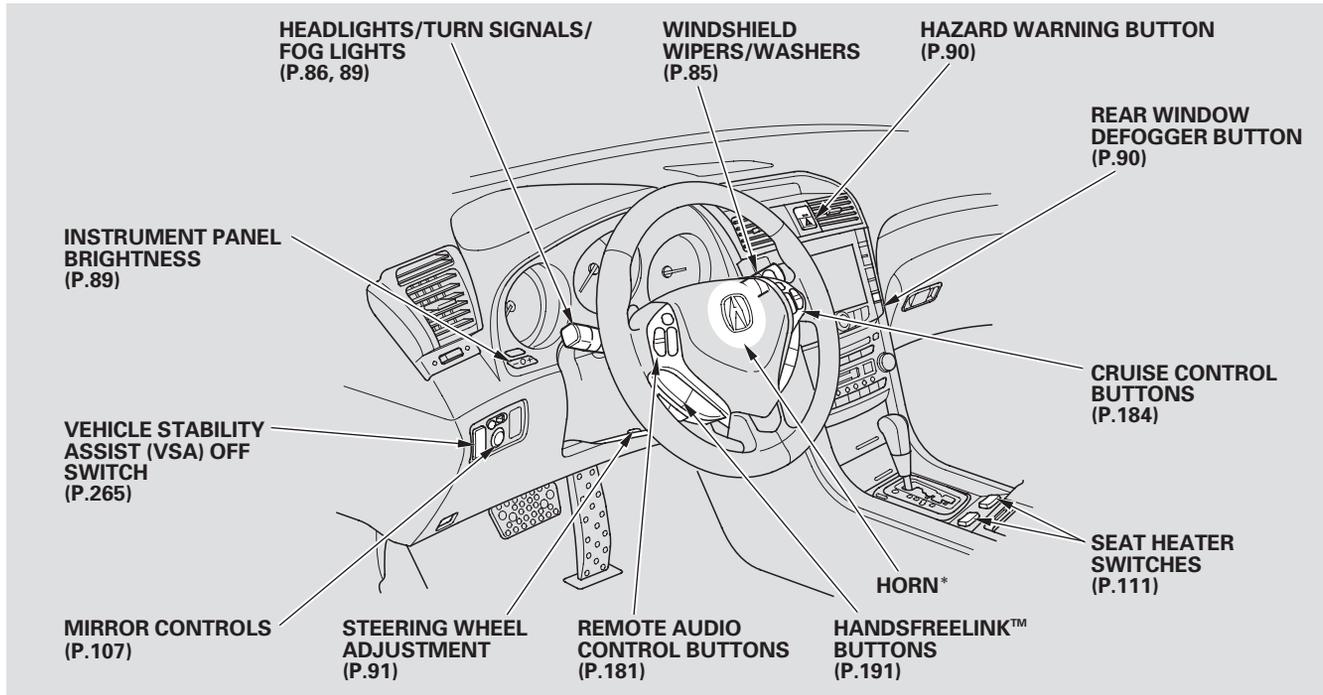
To exit “DEFAULT ALL” without changing the current settings, select “EXIT” by moving the pointer with the INFO (▼) button and enter your



selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

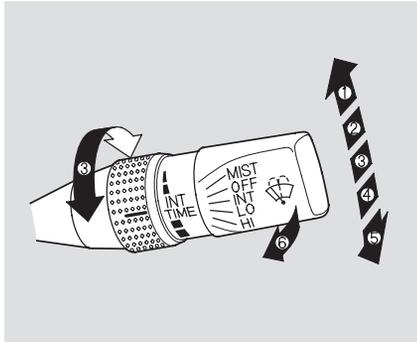
If you select “DEFAULT ALL,” the display changes as shown. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button to cancel “DEFAULT ALL,” or press the SEL/RESET button to confirm your selection is “DEFAULT ALL.”

Controls Near the Steering Wheel



* : To use the horn, press the center pad of the steering wheel.

Windshield Wipers and Washers



1. MIST
2. OFF
3. INT – Intermittent
4. LO – Low speed
5. HI – High speed
6. Windshield washers

Push the right lever up or down to select a position.

MIST – The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

OFF – The wipers are not activated.

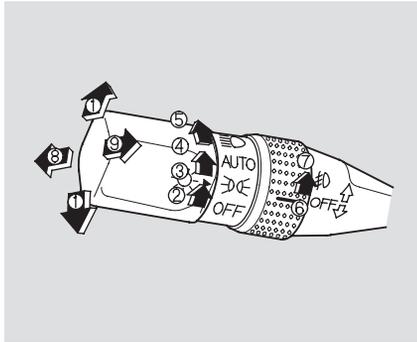
INT – The length of the wiper interval is varied automatically according to the vehicle's speed. Vary the delay by turning the INT TIME ring. If you turn it to the shortest delay, the wiper speed will increase to low speed operation when the vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

LO – The wipers run at low speed.

HI – The wipers run at high speed.

Windshield Washers – Pull the wiper control lever toward you, and hold it. The washers spray until you release the lever. The wipers run at low speed, then complete one more sweep after you release the lever.

Turn Signals and Headlights



1. Turn Signal
2. Off
3. Parking and instrument panel
4. AUTO
5. Headlights on
6. Fog lights off
7. Fog lights on
8. High beams
9. Flash high beams

Turn Signal — Push down on the lever to signal a left turn and up to signal a right turn. To signal a lane change, push lightly on the lever, and hold it. The lever will return to center when you release it or complete a turn.

Headlights — Turning switch to the “” position turns on the parking lights, taillights, instrument panel lights, side-marker lights, and rear license plate lights. Turning the switch to the “” position turns on the headlights. If you leave the lights on with the key removed from the ignition switch, you will hear a reminder tone when you open the driver’s door.

When the light switch is in either of these positions, the lights on indicator comes on as a reminder.

This indicator stays on if you leave the lights on and turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position.

High Beams — To switch from low beams to high beams, push the left lever forward until you hear a click. The high beam indicator will come on (see page 62). Pull it back to return to low beams. To flash the high beams, pull the lever back lightly, then release it. The high beams will stay on as long as you hold the lever back.

Turn Signals and Headlights

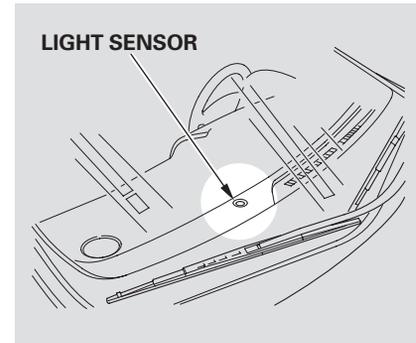
AUTO – The automatic lighting feature turns on the headlights and all other exterior lights when it senses low ambient light.

To turn on automatic lighting, turn the light switch to AUTO at any time. The lights will come on automatically when the outside light level becomes low (at dusk, for example). The lights on indicator comes on as a reminder. The lights and indicator will turn off automatically when the system senses high ambient light.

The lights will remain on when you turn off the ignition switch. They will turn off automatically when you remove the key and open the driver's door. To turn them on again, either turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position or turn the light switch to .

Even with the automatic lighting feature turned on, we recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night or in a dense fog, or when you enter dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

Do not leave the light switch in AUTO if you will not be driving the vehicle for an extended period (a week or more). You should also turn off the lights if you plan to leave the engine idling or off for a long time.



The automatic lighting feature is controlled by a sensor located on top of the dashboard. Do not cover this sensor or spill liquids on it.

CONTINUED

Turn Signals and Headlights

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The automatic lighting off feature turns off the headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights within 15 seconds of removing the key from the ignition switch and closing the driver's door.

To change the "HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER" setting, see page 82.

The automatic lighting off feature activates if you leave the headlight switch in the "  " or "  " position or if the lights are turned on by setting the switch in the "AUTO" position, remove the key, then open and close the driver's door.

If you remove the key from the ignition switch with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door and get out, the lights turn off after 10 minutes.

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door.

If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. With the driver's door open, you will hear a lights-on reminder chime.

Daytime Running Lights

With the headlight switch off, the daytime running lights come on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position and release the parking brake. They remain on until you turn the ignition off, even if you set the parking brake.

Fog Lights, Instrument Panel Brightness

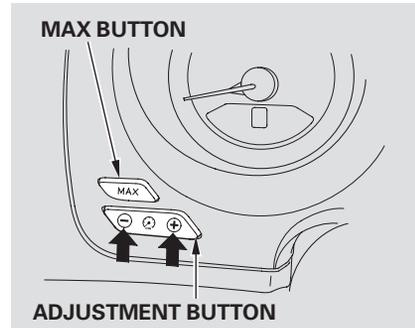
Fog Lights

Turn the fog lights on and off by turning the switch next to the headlight switch.

You can use the fog lights only when the headlights are on low beam.

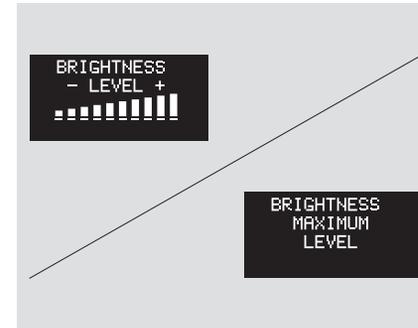
With the light switch in the AUTO position, you can also use the fog lights when the headlights turn on automatically. They will go off when the headlights turn off.

Instrument Panel Brightness



Adjust the brightness of the instrument panel by pressing the - or + side of the adjustment button. Press + to increase the brightness and - to decrease it. You can adjust the brightness with the headlight switch on or off.

The level of brightness is shown on the multi-information display while you adjust it. It goes out 5 seconds after you finish adjusting.

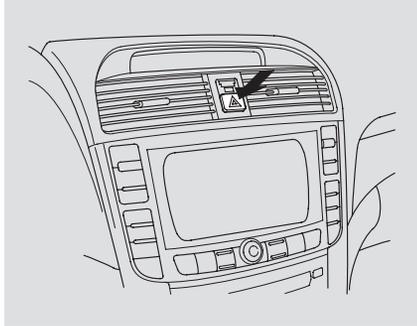


To reduce glare at night, the instrument panel illumination dims when you turn the light switch to ☞☜ or ☞☞ . Pressing the MAX button will bring it to the maximum level.

If your vehicle is equipped with the navigation system, the navigation system screen will also go to full brightness. This can be helpful when using the headlights during daylight hours.

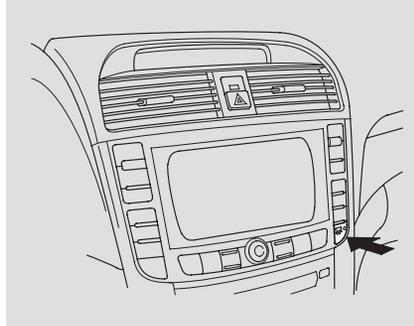
Hazard Warning Button, Rear Window Defogger

Hazard Warning Button



Push the button between the center vents to turn on the hazard warning lights (four-way flashers). This causes all four outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel to flash. Use the hazard warning lights if you need to park in a dangerous area near heavy traffic, or if your vehicle is disabled.

Rear Window Defogger



The rear window defogger clears fog, frost, and thin ice from the window. Push the defogger button to turn it on and off. The indicator in the button comes on to show the defogger is on. If you do not turn it off, the defogger will shut itself off after about 15 minutes. It also shuts off when you turn off the ignition. You have to turn it on again when you restart the vehicle.

Make sure the rear window is clear and you have good visibility before starting to drive.

The defogger and antenna wires on the inside of the rear window can be accidentally damaged. When cleaning the glass, always wipe side to side.

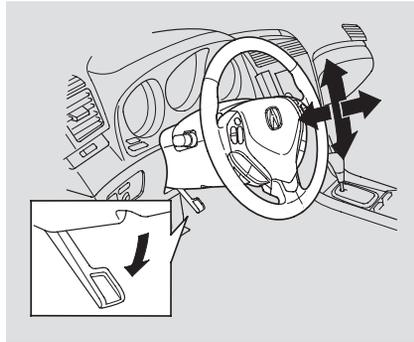
Steering Wheel Adjustment

Make any steering wheel adjustment before you start driving.

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

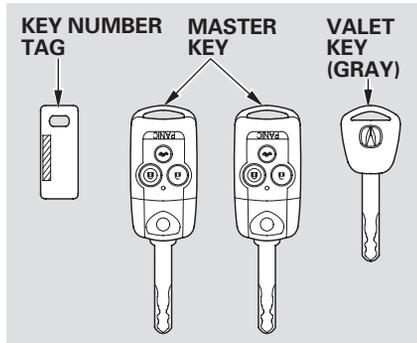


To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Push the lever under the steering column all the way down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out to the desired position, making sure the wheel points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and the indicators.

3. Push the lever up to lock the steering wheel in that position.
4. Make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Keys



The master key fits all the locks on your vehicle.

The valet key works only in the ignition and the driver's door lock. You can keep the trunk pass-through cover and the glove box locked when you leave your vehicle and the valet key at a parking facility.

You should have received a key number tag with your key. You will need this key number if you ever have to get a lost key replaced. Use only an Acura-approved key blank.

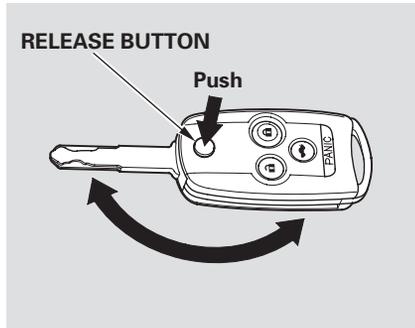
These keys contain electronic circuits that are activated by the immobilizer system. They will not work to start the engine if the circuits are damaged.

- Protect the key from direct sunlight, high temperature, and high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids. If they get wet, dry them immediately with a soft cloth.

The valet key does not contain a battery. Do not try to take it apart.

Keys and Locks

Retractable Master Key



The master key can be retracted into the remote transmitter. To use the key, push the release button. The key should be fully extended. To retract the key, push the release button and at the same time push the key into the remote transmitter until it is securely latched.

Always make sure the key is fully extended when you insert it to the ignition switch. If the key is not fully extended the immobilizer system may not operate properly and prevent the engine from starting.

The key may come in contact with your finger while being retracted or extended. Make sure your fingers do not touch the pivot of the key when retracting or extending it.

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly-coded key (or other device) is used, the engine will not start.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the immobilizer system indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, it means the system does not recognize the coding of the key. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, remove the key, reinsert it, and turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position again.

The system may not recognize your key's coding if another immobilizer key or other metal object (i.e. key fob) is near the ignition switch when you insert the key.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of your key, contact your dealer.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle undrivable.

If you have lost your key and you cannot start the engine, contact your dealer.

As required by the FCC:

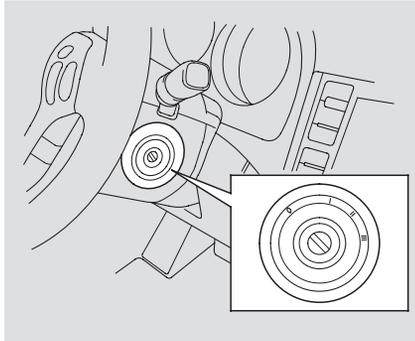
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Ignition Switch



The ignition switch has four positions: **LOCK (0)**, **ACCESSORY (I)**, **ON (II)**, and **START (III)**.

LOCK (0) – You can insert or remove the key only in this position. To turn the key, you must push the key in slightly. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the shift lever must also be in Park.

If the front wheels are turned, the anti-theft lock may make it difficult to turn the key. Firmly turn the steering wheel to the left or right as you turn the key.

ACCESSORY (I) – You can operate the audio system and the accessory power sockets in this position.

ON (II) – This is the normal key position when driving. Several of the indicators on the instrument panel come on as a test when you turn the ignition switch from the **ACCESSORY (I)** to the **ON (II)** position.

START (III) – Use this position only to start the engine. The switch returns to the **ON (II)** position when you let go of the key.

You will hear a reminder beeper if you leave the key in the ignition switch in the **LOCK (0)** or the **ACCESSORY (I)** position and open the driver's door. Remove the key to turn off the beeper.

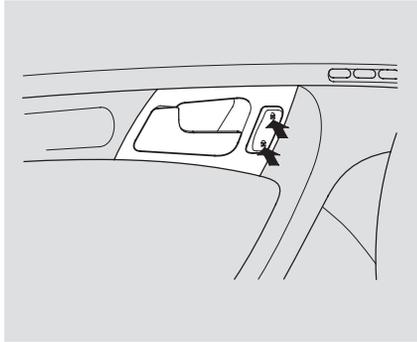
If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, the shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.

⚠ WARNING

Removing the key from the ignition switch while driving locks the steering. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

Remove the key from the ignition switch only when parked.

Door Locks



Each front door has a master door lock switch. Either switch locks and unlocks all doors. Push the bottom of the switch to lock the doors and the top to unlock them.

Each door has a lock tab on the top. Push the tab down to lock the door and pull it up to unlock. When you push down the lock tab on the driver's door, all the doors lock.

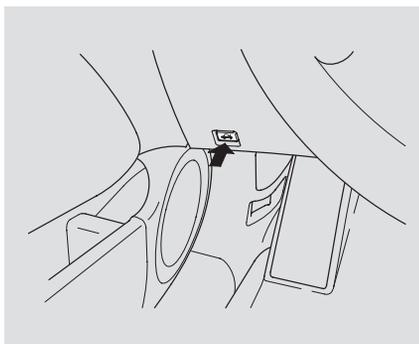
To lock any door when getting out of the vehicle, push the lock tab down, and close the door.

All doors can be locked from the outside by using the key in the driver's door. To unlock only the driver's door, insert the key, turn it, and then release it. The remaining doors unlock when you turn the key a second time within a few seconds.

Lockout Prevention

With the driver's door open and the key in the ignition, both master door lock switches are disabled. If you try to lock an open driver's door by pushing in the lock tab, all doors will unlock when you close the driver's door.

Trunk



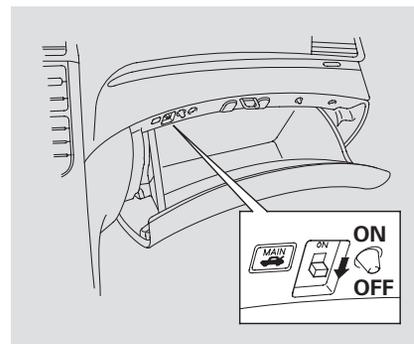
To open the trunk, press the trunk release button on the left corner of the dashboard. To open the trunk from the outside, press the trunk release button on the remote transmitter.

To close the trunk, press down on the trunk lid.



If your vehicle's battery goes dead or is disconnected, you can open the trunk from the rear seat by pulling the trunk release handle. Reach the handle through the trunk pass-through.

Keep the trunk lid closed at all times while driving to avoid damaging it, and to prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard**, page 52.

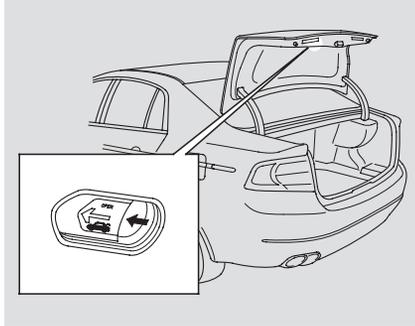


To protect items in the trunk, you can disable the trunk-release button on the dashboard by turning off the trunk main switch in the glove box, locking the glove box, and locking the trunk pass-through cover with the master key.

If you need to give the key to someone else, give them the valet key.

Trunk, Childproof Door Locks

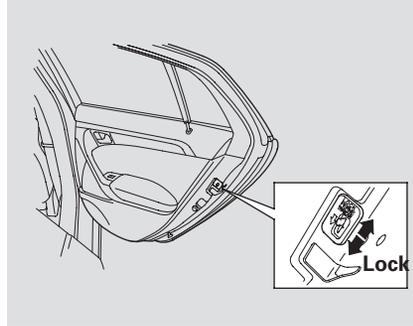
Emergency Trunk Opener



As a safety feature, your vehicle has a release lever on the trunk latch so the trunk can be opened from inside. To open the trunk, push the release lever to the left.

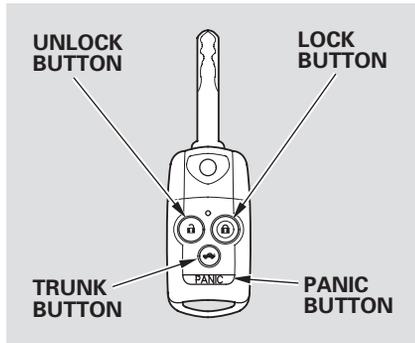
Parents should decide if their children should be shown how to use this feature. For more information about child safety, see page 37.

Childproof Door Locks



The childproof door locks are designed to prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. Each rear door has a lock lever near the edge. With the lever in the LOCK position, the door cannot be opened from inside regardless of the position of the lock tab. To open the door, pull the lock tab up, and use the outside door handle.

Remote Transmitter



LOCK – Press this button once to lock all doors. Some exterior lights will flash. When you push **LOCK** twice within 5 seconds (depending on the keyless memory setting), you will hear a beep to verify that the doors are locked and the security system has set. You cannot lock the doors if any door is not fully closed or if the key is in the ignition switch.

UNLOCK – Press this button once to unlock the driver's door or all the doors (depending on the keyless memory setting). Press it twice to unlock the other doors. Some exterior lights will flash twice each time you press the button. The ceiling light (if the ceiling light switch is in the center position) will come on when you press the **UNLOCK** button. If you do not open any doors within 30 seconds (or whatever setting the relock timer is set to), the light fades out. If you relock the doors with the remote transmitter before 30 seconds have elapsed, the light will go off immediately.

If you unlock the doors with the remote transmitter, but do not open any doors within 30 seconds, the doors automatically relock and the security system sets. To change this setting, refer to Keyless Memory Settings on page 81 .

TRUNK – Press this button for about 1 second to open the trunk.

PANIC – Press this button for about 2 seconds to attract attention: the horn will sound, and the exterior lights will flash for about 30 seconds. To cancel panic mode, press any other button on the remote transmitter, or turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

Remote Transmitter

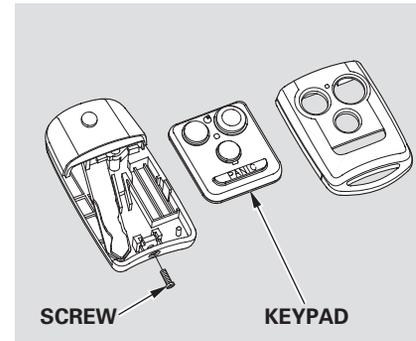
Remote Transmitter Care

- Avoid dropping or throwing the transmitter.
- Protect the transmitter from extreme temperature.
- Do not immerse the transmitter in any liquid.
- If you lose a transmitter, the replacement needs to be reprogrammed by your dealer.

Replacing the Transmitter Battery

If it takes several pushes on the button to lock or unlock the doors and the tailgate, replace the battery as soon as possible.

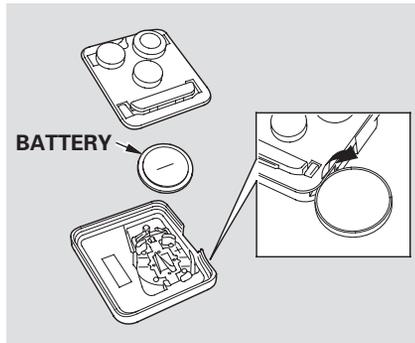
Battery type: CR1616



To replace the battery:

1. Remove the screw at the base of the transmitter with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.
2. Separate the keypad from the transmitter by pushing any button from outside.

Remote Transmitter



3. Place a cloth on the edge of the keypad, and remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a small flat-tip screwdriver or coin.

4. Remove the old battery and note the polarity. Make sure the polarity of the new battery is the same (– side facing up), then insert it in the keypad.

An improperly disposed of battery can hurt the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

5. Snap the two halves of the keypad, then install the parts in reverse order.

As required by the FCC:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

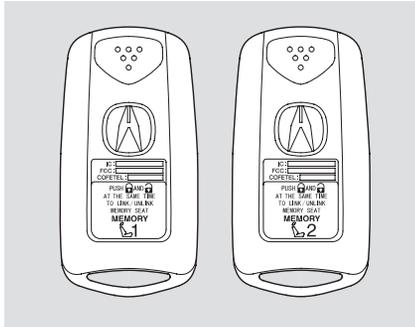
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Remote Transmitter

Keyless Memory Settings™



When you unlock the driver's door with a remote, that remote's keyless memory settings are activated. Depending on which remote was used, a WELCOME DRIVER 1 or WELCOME DRIVER 2 message appears on the multi-information display. The driver's ID (MEMORY 1 or MEMORY 2) is printed on the back of each remote.

Here are the settings activated by the remote;

- Customized settings (see page 77).
- Driving position memory (see page 108).

When you unlock and open the driver's door with the remote, the driver's seat (except power lumbar) and outside mirrors move to the positions stored in memory. An indicator on one of the driving position memory buttons also comes on.

To turn off this feature, press and hold the LOCK and UNLOCK buttons at the same time. The LED in the remote will blink twice. Then release the buttons. Doing this cancels the keyless memory settings for that remote and restores the default settings.

To turn the keyless memory settings back on, repeat this procedure. The LED will blink once to indicate the feature has been turned on.

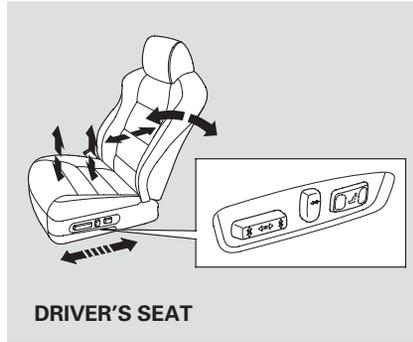
Front Seat Power Adjustments

See pages 12 – 13 for important safety information and warnings about how to properly position seats and seat-backs.

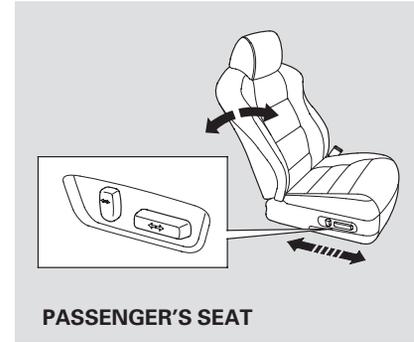
The controls for the power adjustable front seats are on the outside edge of each seat bottom. You can adjust the seats with the ignition switch in any position. Make all seat adjustments before you start driving.

Moving the long horizontal switch on the driver's seat adjusts the seat bottom in several directions. On the passenger's seat, the long horizontal switch moves the seat only back and forth. The short vertical switch adjusts the seat back angle.

The short horizontal switch on the driver's seat adjusts the degree of lumbar support.



-  Moves the seat forward and backward.
-  Moves the front of the seat up or down. (Driver's seat only)
-  Raises or lowers the seat. (Driver's seat only)



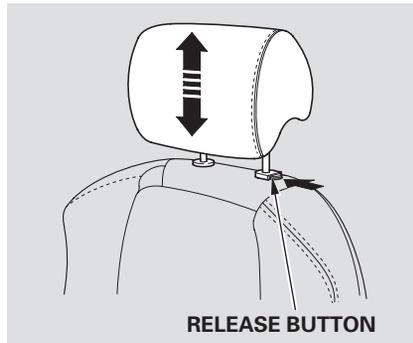
-  Moves the whole seat up and forward, or down and backward. The front of the seat also tilts up or down at the same time. (Driver's seat only)
-  Adjusts the seat-back angle forward or backward.
-  Increases or decreases the lumbar support. (Driver's seat only)

Seats

Head Restraints

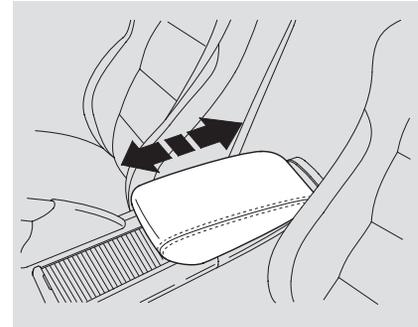
See page 13 for important safety information and a warning about how to properly position the head restraints.

The head restraints help protect you and your passengers from whiplash and other injuries. They are most effective when you adjust them so the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. A taller person should adjust the restraint as high as possible.



All head restraints adjust for height. The tilt of the front head restraints is also adjustable. You need both hands to adjust the restraint. Do not attempt to adjust it while driving. To raise it, pull upward. To lower the restraint, push the release button sideways, and push the restraint down. To adjust the tilt, pivot the front head restraint to the desired position.

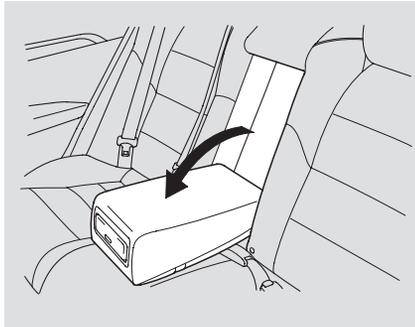
Armrest



The lid of the console compartment can be used as an armrest by moving it forward and backward. Make sure the armrest is securely latched.

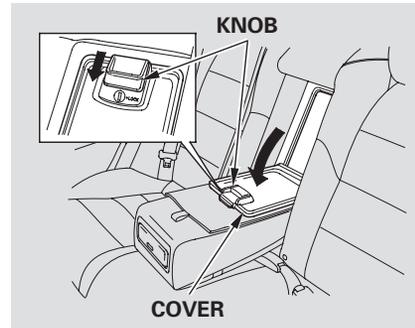
Make sure your passenger's hands or fingers are away from the armrest before moving it.

Seats, Trunk Pass-through Cover



The rear seat armrest is in the center of the rear seat. Pivot it down to use it.

Trunk Pass-through Cover



The trunk pass-through cover can be opened from either side; it folds forward onto the center armrest. Open the cover by sliding the knob downward and pushing or pulling on the cover. To close the cover, swing it up and push firmly on the top. Make sure it latches properly.

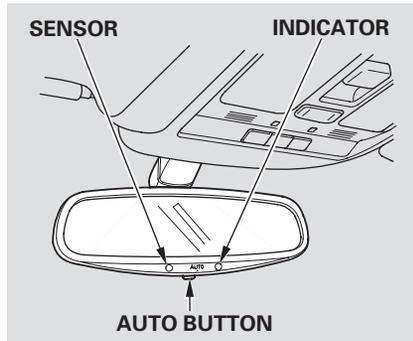
Make sure all items in the trunk and those extending through the pass-through are secured.

For security, this cover can be locked and unlocked only with the master key. To lock the cover, insert the key, and turn it clockwise.

Never drive with this cover open and the trunk lid open. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page 52.

Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility. Be sure to adjust the mirrors before you start driving.



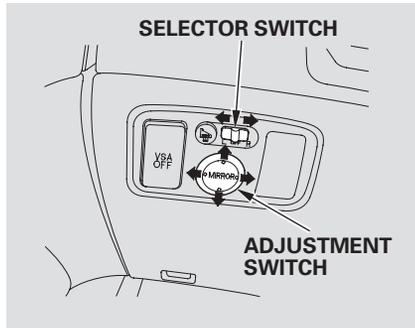
The inside mirror can automatically darken to reduce glare. To turn on this feature, press the button on the bottom of the mirror. The AUTO indicator comes on as a reminder. When it is on, the mirror darkens when it senses the headlights of a vehicle behind you, then returns to normal visibility when the lights are gone. Press the button again to turn off this sensing.

NOTICE

There is a sensor on the back of the mirror. Items hung on the mirror may block this sensor and affect its performance.

Mirrors

Adjusting the Power Mirrors



1. With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, move the selector switch to the L (driver's side), or R (passenger's side).
2. Push the edge of the adjustment switch to move the mirror right, left, up, or down.

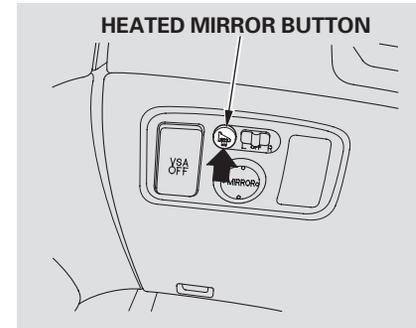
3. When finished, move the selector switch back to the center (off) position.

When the gear selector is moved to R (reverse) and the selector switch in the:

- Left position — the driver's side mirror tilts.
- Right position — the passenger's side mirror tilts down.
- Center position — the tilt-down feature is inactive.

Outside mirror positions can be stored in the driving position memory system (see page 108).

Power Mirror Heaters



The outside mirrors are heated to remove fog and frost. With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, turn on the heaters by pressing the button. The indicator in the button comes on as a reminder. Press the button again to turn the heaters off.

Driving Position Memory System

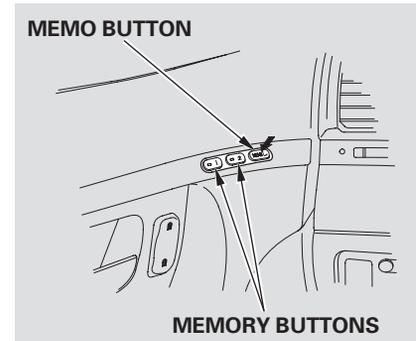
Your vehicle has a memory feature for the driver's seat and outside mirror positions.

Two seat and outside mirror positions can be stored in separate memories. You select a memorized position by pushing the appropriate button or using the appropriate remote transmitter (Driver 1 or Driver 2).

Storing a Driving Position in Memory

Store a driving position only when the vehicle is parked.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. You cannot add a new driving position to the memory unless the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position. You can recall a memorized position with the ignition switch in any position.
2. Adjust the seat to a comfortable position (see page 103). Adjust the outside mirrors for best visibility (see page 107).



3. Press and release the MEMO button on the driver's door. You will hear a beep. Immediately press and hold one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) until you hear two beeps. The indicator in the memory button will come on. The current positions of the driver's seat and outside mirrors are now stored.

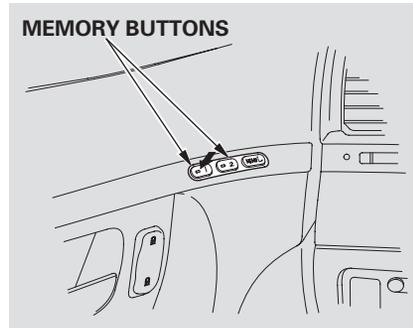
Driving Position Memory System

Doing any of the following after pressing the MEMO button will cancel the storing procedure.

- Not pressing a memory button within 5 seconds.
- Readjusting the seat position.
- Readjust the outside mirror position.

Each memory button stores only one driving position. Storing a new position erases the previous setting stored in that button's memory. If you want to add a new position while retaining the current one, use the other memory button.

Selecting a Memorized Position



To select a memorized position, do this:

1. Make sure the parking brake is set (M/T) or the shift lever is in Park (A/T).
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2) until you hear a beep, then release the button.

The system will move the seat and outside mirrors to the memorized positions. The indicator in the selected memory button will flash during movement. When the adjustments are complete, you will hear two beeps, and the indicator will remain on.

Notes for vehicles with M/T

- You cannot select a memorized position if the transmission is in reverse. Shift to another gear, then select a position.
- If the parking brake is not set, you must press and hold the memory button until the adjustment is complete.

CONTINUED

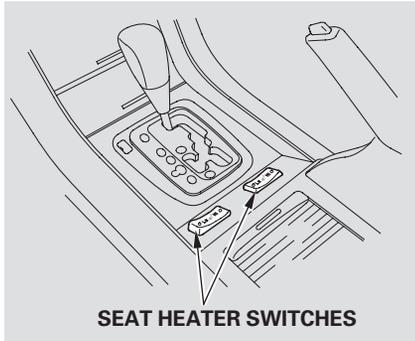
Driving Position Memory System

To stop the system's automatic adjustment, do any of these actions:

- Press any button on the control panel: MEMO, 1, or 2.
- Push any of the adjustment switches for the seat.
- Shift out of Park (automatic transmission), or into reverse (manual transmission).
- Adjust the outside mirrors.

If desired, you can use the adjustment switches to change the positions of the seat or outside mirrors after they are in their memorized position. If you change the memorized position, the indicator in the memory button will go out. To keep this driving position for later use, you must store it in the driving position memory.

Seat Heaters



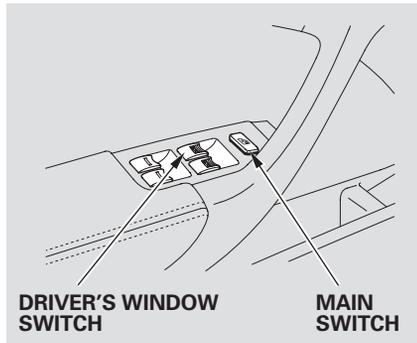
Both front seats are equipped with seat heaters. The passenger seat only has heaters in the seat bottom because of the side airbag off system. The ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position to use them. Push the HI side of the switch to rapidly heat up the seat. After the seat reaches a comfortable temperature, push the LO side of the switch. This will keep the seat warm.

In the HI setting, the heater turns off when the seat gets warm, and turns back on after the seat's temperature drops. In the LO setting, the heater runs continuously. It does not cycle with temperature changes.

Follow these precautions whenever you use the seat heaters:

- Use the HI setting only to heat the seats quickly, because it draws large amounts of current from the battery.
- If the engine is left idling for an extended period, do not use the seat heaters even on the LO setting. It can weaken the battery, causing hard starting.

Power Windows



Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position to raise or lower any window. To open a window, push the switch down and hold it. Release the switch when you want the window to stop. Pull back on the switch and hold it to close the window.

The windows will operate for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. Opening either front door cancels this function.

⚠ WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

The driver's door armrest has a master power window control panel. To open the passenger's window, push down on the appropriate switch and hold it until the window reaches the desired position. To close the window, pull back on the window switch. Release the switch when the window gets to the position you want.

AUTO – To open either front window fully, push the window switch firmly down to the second detent, then release it. The window automatically goes down all the way. To stop the window from going all the way down, pull back on the window switch briefly.

Power Windows

To close either front window fully, pull back the window switch firmly to the second detent, then release it. The window automatically goes all the way up. To stop the window from going all the way up, push down on the window switch briefly.

When you push the MAIN switch in, the switch is off, and the passenger windows cannot be raised or lowered. To cancel this feature, push on the switch again to get it to pop out. Keep the MAIN switch off when you have children in the vehicle so they do not injure themselves by operating the windows unintentionally.

Auto Reverse

If either front window runs into any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction, and then stop. To close the window, remove the obstacle, then use the window switch again.

Auto reverse stops sensing when the window is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the window before closing it.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, or a front window fuse is removed, the AUTO function is disabled. The power window system needs to be reset after reconnecting the battery or installing the fuse.

1. Start the engine. Push down and hold the front window switch until the window is fully open.
2. Pull and hold the front window switch to close the window completely, then hold the switch for a second or two more.

If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, have your vehicle checked by your dealer.

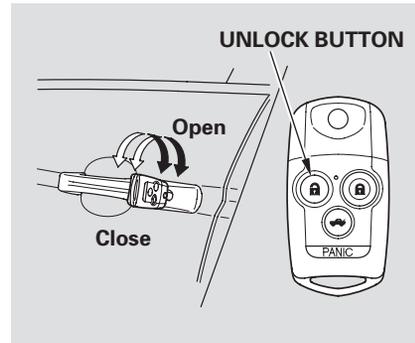
Power Windows

Opening the Windows and Moonroof with the Remote Transmitter

You can open all of the windows and the moonroof from outside with the remote transmitter.

1. Press the UNLOCK button once to unlock the driver's door.
2. Press the UNLOCK button a second time, and hold it. The passenger's doors unlock, and all four windows and moonroof start to open. To stop the windows and moonroof, release the button.
3. To open the windows and moonroof further, press the button again and hold it. If the windows and the moonroof stop before the desired position, repeat steps 1 and 2.

You cannot close the windows or the moonroof with the remote transmitter.



Opening/Closing the Windows and Moonroof with the Key

You can open and close the windows and moonroof with the key in the driver's door lock.

To open:

1. Insert the key in the driver's door lock.
2. Turn the key clockwise, then release it.

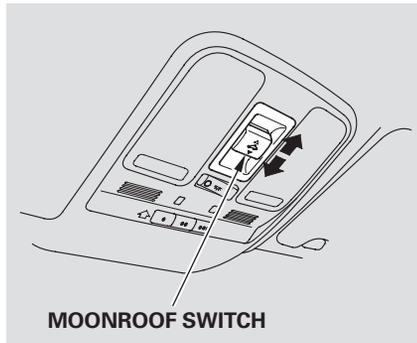
3. Turn the key clockwise again, and hold it. All four windows and moonroof start to open. To stop the windows and the moonroof, release the key.
4. To open the windows and moonroof further, turn and hold the key again (within 15 seconds).

To close:

1. Insert the key in the driver's door lock.
2. Turn the key counterclockwise, then release it.
3. Turn the key counterclockwise again, and hold it. All four windows and the moonroof start to close. To stop the windows and the moonroof, release the key.
4. To close the windows and moonroof further, turn and hold the key again (within 15 seconds).

NOTE: If the windows and moonroof stop before the desired position, repeat steps 2 and 3.

Moonroof



To slide the moonroof open, pull back the moonroof switch firmly. The moonroof automatically opens all the way. To stop the moonroof from opening fully, push the switch forward briefly.

To tilt the moonroof, press straight up on the center of the switch. To stop the moonroof from tilting fully open, press the switch a second time.

To close the moonroof fully, push the switch firmly forward. The moonroof automatically closes all the way. To stop the moonroof from closing fully, pull back the switch briefly.

To open or close the moonroof partially, pull back or push forward the moonroof switch lightly and hold it. The moonroof will stop when you release the switch.

Make sure everyone's hands are away from the moonroof before opening or closing it.

⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

Auto Reverse

If the moonroof runs into any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction, and then stop. To close the moonroof, remove the obstacle, then use the moonroof switch again.

Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the moonroof before closing it.

CONTINUED

Moonroof, Clock

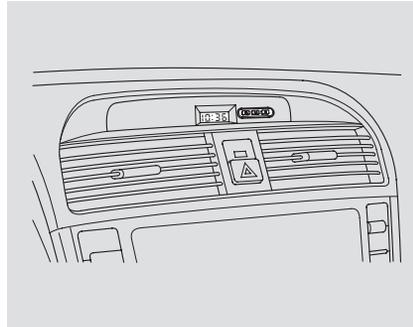
The moonroof has a key-off delay. You can still open and close the moonroof for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. The key-off delay cancels as soon as you open either front door. You must then turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position for the moonroof to operate.

NOTICE

If you try to open the moonroof in below-freezing temperatures, or when it is covered with snow or ice, you can damage the moonroof panel or its motor.

Operating the Moonroof with the Remote Transmitter or the Key
You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the moonroof from the outside. Refer to page 114 for details.

Clock



On models without navigation system
The clock displays the time with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position. If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, you will need to reset the clock.

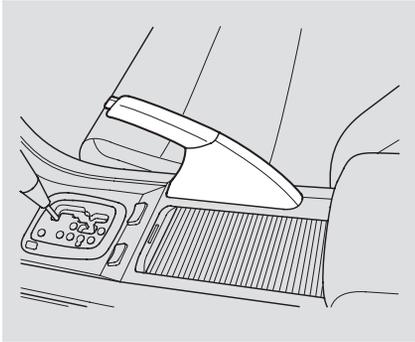
Change the hour by pressing and holding the H button until the numbers advance to the desired time. Change the minutes by pressing and holding the M button until the numbers advance to the desired time.

You can quickly set the time to the nearest hour. If the displayed time is before the half hour, press the R button to set the clock back to the previous hour. If the displayed time is after the half hour, the clock sets forward to the beginning of the next hour.

For example: 1:06 will reset to 1:00
1:52 will reset to 2:00

On models with navigation system
The clock is set automatically.

Parking Brake



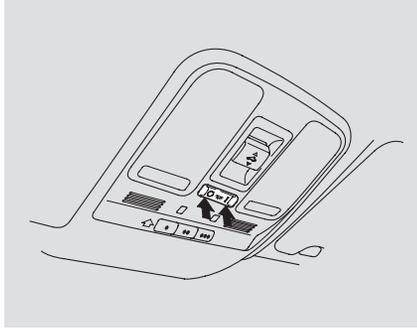
To apply the parking brake, pull the lever up fully. To release it, pull up slightly, push the button, and lower the lever. The parking brake indicator on the instrument panel should go out when the parking brake is fully released (see page 59).

NOTICE

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake applied can damage the rear brakes and axles. A beeper will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake on.

Interior Lights

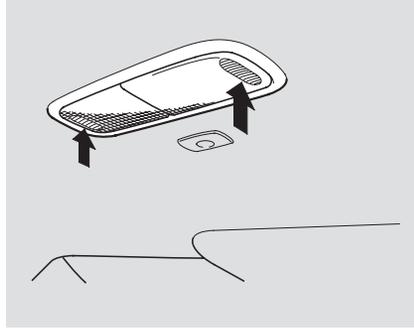
Ceiling Light



The front ceiling light has a three-position switch; ON, Door Activated, and OFF.

When the “ | ” side of the switch is pushed in, both front and rear ceiling lights are ON all the time.

When the “ ○ ” side is pushed in, the lights are off all the time.



When neither side is pushed in (Door Activated), the lights come on when you:

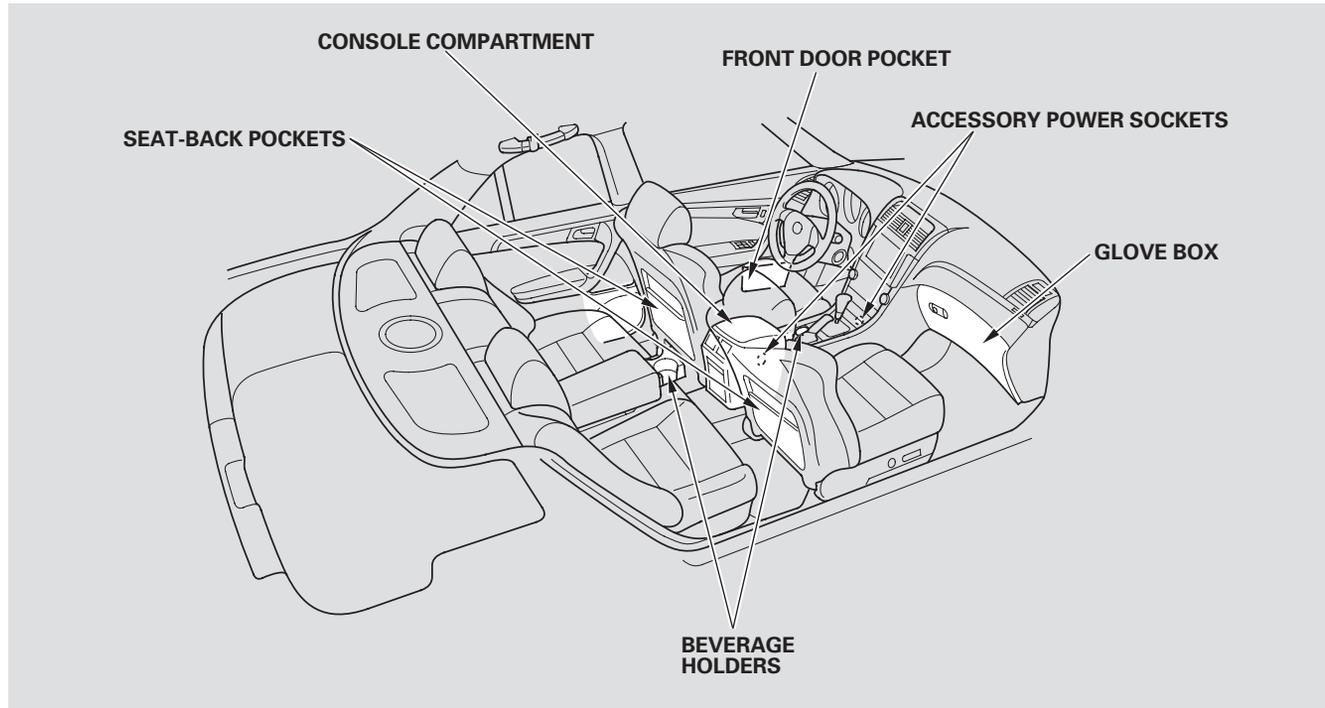
- Open any door.
- Unlock the doors with the key or remote transmitter.

After all doors are closed tightly, both front and rear ceiling lights fade out in 5, 15, or 30 seconds depending on your custom setting (see page 83).

Both front and rear ceiling lights work as individual map lights. To turn a map light on or off, press its lens. You can use the front map lights regardless of the position of the front ceiling light switch.

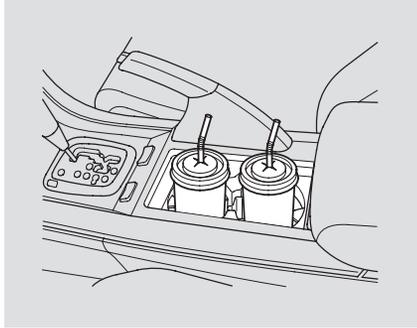
With the front ceiling light switch in the OFF position, the rear map lights do not work, and the interior lights do not come on when you open a door.

Interior Convenience Items



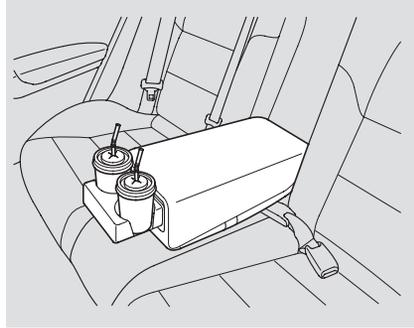
Interior Convenience Items

Beverage Holders



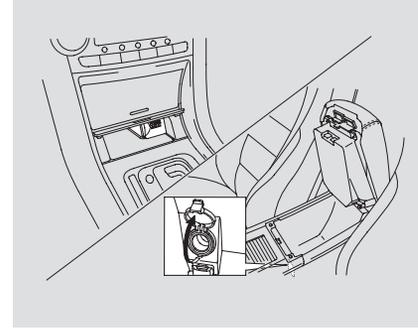
Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. A spilled liquid that is very hot can scald you or your passengers. Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Open the front beverage holder by sliding its cover backward.



The rear beverage holder is in the rear seat armrest. Open the beverage holder by pushing the front of it, and pulling the holder all the way out.

Accessory Power Sockets



There are two accessory power sockets. One is in the front of the center console under the utility pocket lid. The other is under the armrest in the console compartment storage area.

These sockets are intended to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 120 watts or less (10 amps).

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box

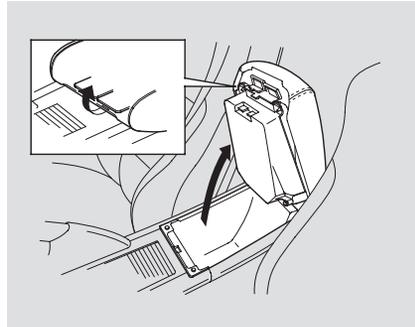
Open the glove box by squeezing the handle. Close it with a firm push. Lock or unlock the glove box with the master key.

⚠ WARNING

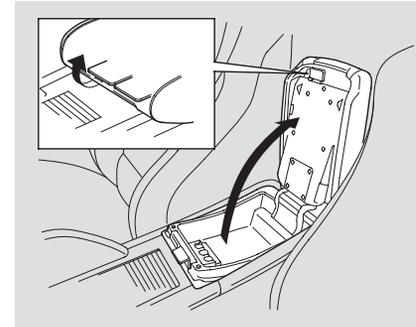
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Console Compartment



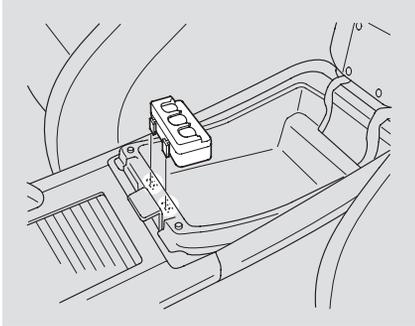
To open the console compartment storage area, pull up on the left lever, and lift the armrest. To close, lower the armrest, and push it down until it latches.



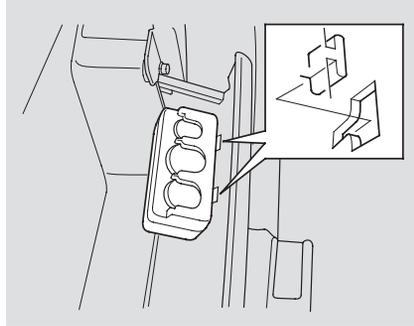
You can put small items in the tray located in the console compartment lid. To use the tray, pull up on the right lever and lift up the armrest.

Interior Convenience Items

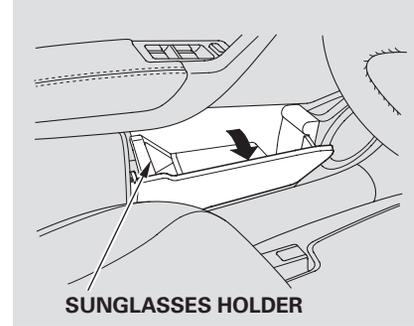
Coin Holder



The coin holder inside the console compartment is removable. To remove it, pull it up. The coin holder can also be stored in either front door pocket.



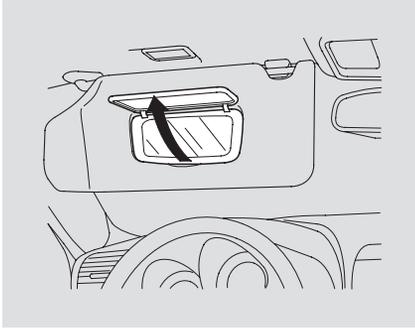
Front Door Pockets



The interior of each front door has an extendable pocket for maps and other small, lightweight items. Each pocket also has a sunglasses holder. You can remove the sunglasses holder to make more room in the pocket.

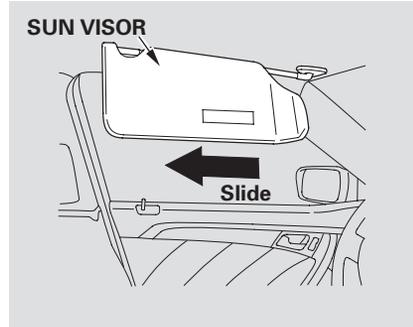
Interior Convenience Item

Vanity Mirror



Each sun visor has a vanity mirror on the back of it. To use a vanity mirror, pull up the cover. The light come on when you open the cover.

Sun Visor



To use the sun visor, pull it down. When using the sun visor for the side window, remove the support rod from the clip, and swing it out. In this position, the sun visor can be adjusted by moving it on its slider.

Make sure you put the sun visor back in place when you are getting into or out of the vehicle.

06/08/18 21:05:02 31SEP630 0129

Features

The climate control systems in your vehicle provide a comfortable driving environment in all weather conditions.

The standard audio system has many features. This section describes those features and how to use them.

Your vehicle has an anti-theft audio system that requires a code number to enable it.

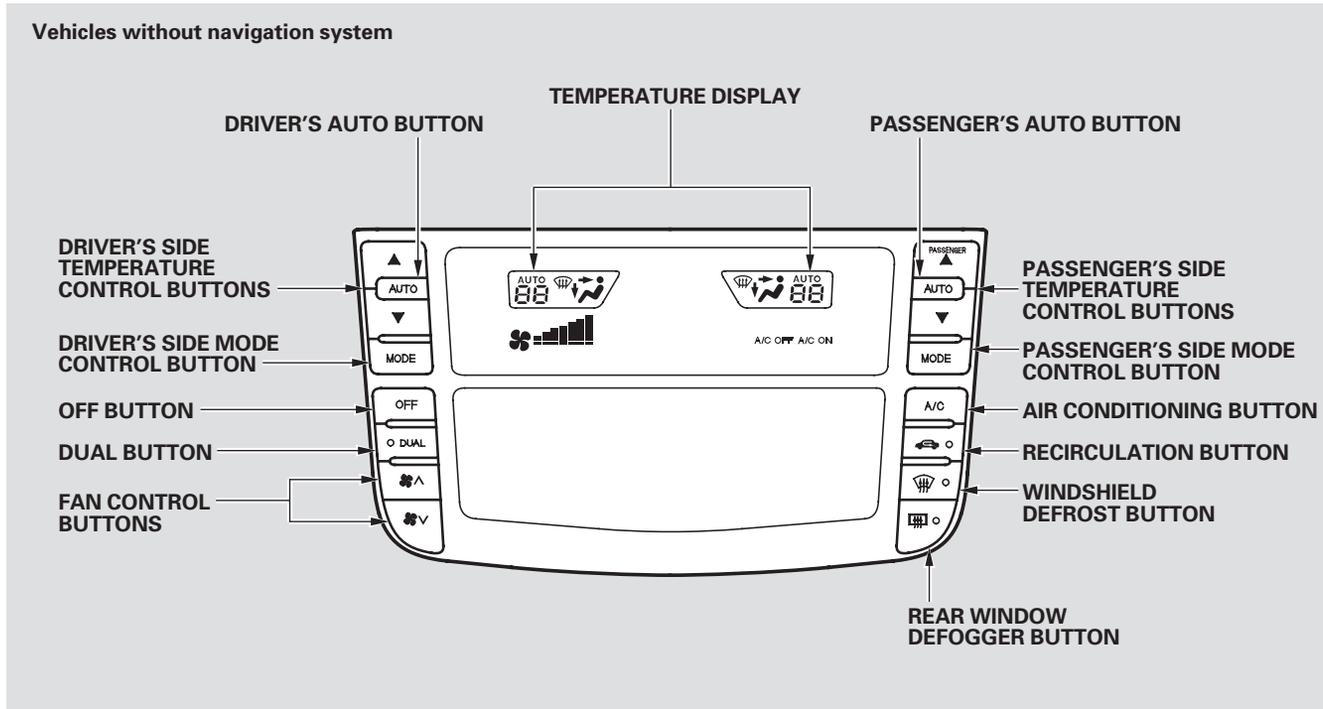
The security system helps to discourage vandalism and theft of your vehicle.

Vents, Heating, and A/C	126
Airflow Buttons.....	128
Climate Control.....	131
Audio System	133
Audio System (Models without Navigation System)	134
Playing the AM/FM Radio.....	135
Playing the XM® Satellite Radio	139
Operating the Disc Changer	145
Playing a Tape.....	152
Audio System (Models with Navigation System)	155
Voice Control System.....	155
Playing the AM/FM Radio.....	156
Playing the XM® Satellite Radio	159
Operating the Disc Changer	165
Playing a Tape.....	173
Disc Changer Error Messages	176
Protecting Your Discs.....	177
AM/FM Radio Reception.....	178
Auxiliary Input Jack.....	180
Remote Audio Controls.....	181
Radio Theft Protection.....	182
Security System	183

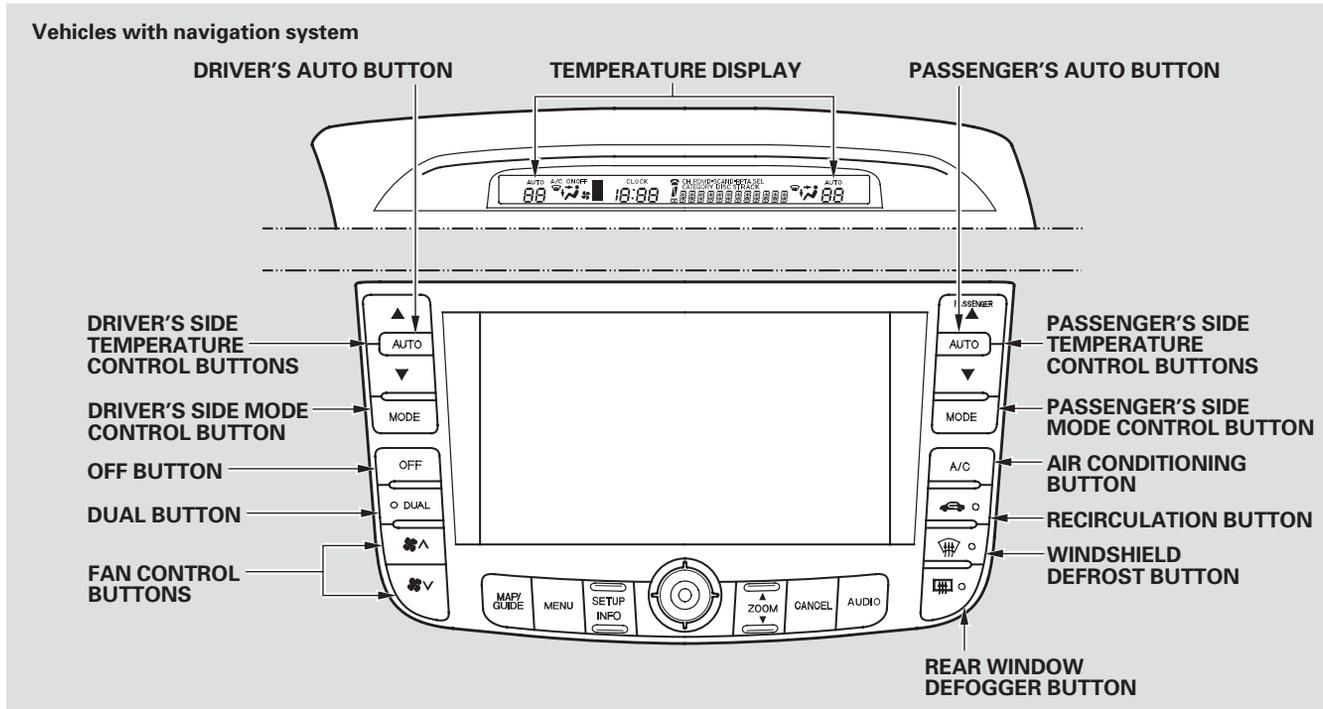
Cruise Control.....	184
HomeLink Universal Transceiver.....	187
HandsFreeLink.....	190
AcuraLink.....	217
Compass.....	228
Rear View Camera and Monitor ..	231

Features

Vents, Heating, and A/C



Vents, Heating, and A/C



Features

Airflow Buttons

Voice Control System

Only on models with navigation system
The climate control system in your vehicle can also be operated using the voice control system. See the navigation section in your quick start guide for an overview of this system and the navigation system manual for complete details.

Fan Control Buttons

Press the  button to increase the fan speed and airflow. Press the  button to decrease it.

Temperature Control Buttons

The driver's side temperature and passenger's side temperature can be set separately. Press either side's  button to increase the temperature of airflow. Press either side's  button to decrease it. When you set the temperature to its lower limit or its upper limit, it will be displayed as "Lo" or "Hi".

Air Conditioning (A/C) Button

This button turns the air conditioning on and off. The A/C ON indicator comes on in the display when the A/C is on.

Recirculation Button

When the indicator in the button is on, air from the vehicle's interior is recirculated throughout the system. When the indicator is off, air is brought in from the outside of the vehicle (fresh air mode). The outside air intakes for the heating and cooling system are at the base of the windshield. Keep this area clear of leaves and other debris. The system should be left in fresh air mode under almost all conditions. Keeping the system in recirculation mode, particularly with the A/C off, can cause the windows to fog up. Switch to recirculation mode when driving through dusty or smoky conditions, then return to fresh air mode.

Rear Window Defogger Button

This button turns the rear window defogger off and on (see page 90).

Vents, Heating, and A/C

Mode Control Button

Use the mode control button to select the vents the air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard vents in all modes.

 Air flows from the center and corner vents in the dashboard.

 Airflow is divided between the vents in the dashboard and the floor vents.

 Air flows from the floor vents. When you select , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode.

 Airflow is divided between the floor vents and the defroster vents at the base of the windshield.

 Air flows from the defroster vents at the base of the windshield.

When you select  or , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C. In this case, you cannot turn the A/C off.

The driver's side mode and passenger's side mode can be selected separately when the dual button is pressed. However, when  is selected on the driver's side, mode selection on the passenger's side is not possible.

When  is selected, the passenger's temperature cannot be set separately from the driver's.

Dual Button

You can set the temperatures and modes for the driver's side and the passenger's side separately when this button is pressed (indicator on). When the indicator in the DUAL button is off, you can adjust both sides to the same temperature and mode with the driver's side

temperature control buttons and mode control button.

Ventilation

The flow-through ventilation system draws in outside air, circulates it through the interior, then exhausts it through vents near the rear window.

1. Set the temperature to maximum.
2. Make sure the A/C is off.
3. Select  and fresh air mode.
4. Set the fan to the desired speed.

Using the Heater

The heater uses engine coolant to warm the air. If the engine is cold, it will be several minutes before you feel warm air coming from the system.

1. Select  and fresh air mode.
2. Set the fan to the desired speed.
3. Adjust the warmth of the air with the temperature control buttons.

Vents, Heating, and A/C

Using the A/C

Air conditioning places an extra load on the engine. Watch the engine coolant temperature gauge (see page 66). If it moves near the red zone, turn off the A/C until the gauge reading returns to normal.

1. Turn on the A/C by pressing the button.
2. Set the temperature to the desired level. For quick cooling set the temperature to maximum cool.
3. Select .
4. If the outside air is humid, select recirculation mode. If the outside air is dry, select fresh air mode.
5. Set the fan to the desired speed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning on the air conditioning, and setting the fan to maximum speed in fresh air mode.

Dehumidify the Interior

Air conditioning, as it cools, removes moisture from the air. When used in combination with the heater, it makes the interior warm and dry.

1. Switch the fan on.
2. Turn on the air conditioning.
3. Select  and fresh air mode.
4. Adjust the temperature to your preference.

This setting is suitable for all driving conditions whenever the outside temperature is above 32°F (0°C).

To Defog and Defrost

To remove fog from inside the windows:

1. Set the fan to the desired speed, or on high for faster defrosting.
2. Select . When you select , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C. The A/C ON

indicator will not come on, if it was previously off.

3. Adjust the temperature so the airflow feels warm.
4. Select  to help clear the rear window.

When you select  or , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C. This helps to dehumidify the air and to defog the windshield. In either mode, you cannot turn off the A/C. When you switch to another mode, the A/C returns to its original setting, either on or off, as displayed by the A/C ON or A/C OFF indicator.

Climate Control

To Remove Exterior Frost or Ice From the Windows

1. Select . The system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C. The A/C indicator does not come on if it was previously off.
2. Select .
3. Set the fan and temperature controls to maximum level.

To clear the windshield faster, you can close the dashboard corner vents by rotating the wheel below each vent. This sends more warm air to the windshield defroster vents. Once the windshield is clear, select fresh air mode to avoid fogging the windows.

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

To Cool or Heat Automatically

The automatic climate control system adjusts the fan speed and airflow levels to maintain the interior temperature you select.

On models with navigation system

In AUTO mode, the vehicle's interior temperature is independently regulated for the driver and passenger. If the driver's side of the vehicle is getting too much sun, the system will adjust to a lower temperature.

Using Automatic Climate Control

1. Press the AUTO button.
2. Set the desired temperature with the temperature control buttons. You will see AUTO in the system's display.

When the AUTO button on the driver's side is pressed, the temperature control buttons on the passenger's side are disabled, and the interior temperature is regulated to the temperature set on the driver's side. When the AUTO button on the passenger's side is pressed, temperature can be set on the driver's side and passenger's side separately.

The system automatically selects the proper mix of conditioned and/or heated air that will, as quickly as possible, raise or lower the interior temperature to your preference.

When you set the temperature to its lower or its upper limit, the system runs at full cooling or heating only. It does not regulate the interior temperature.

Climate Control

When you press a fan control button, the fan is taken out of AUTO mode and starts to run at its lowest speed. Press the  button to make the fan run faster.

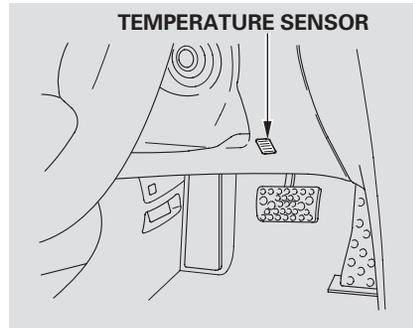
Semi-automatic Operation

You can manually select various functions of the climate control system when it is in fully automatic mode. All other features remain automatically controlled. Making any manual selection causes the word AUTO in the display to go out.

To Turn Everything Off

Press the OFF button. However, a lack of airflow can cause the windows to fog up. You should keep the fan on at all times so stale air and moisture do not build up in the interior and cause fogging.

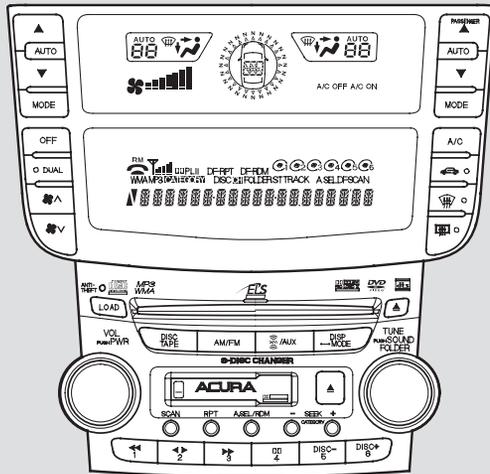
Temperature Sensor



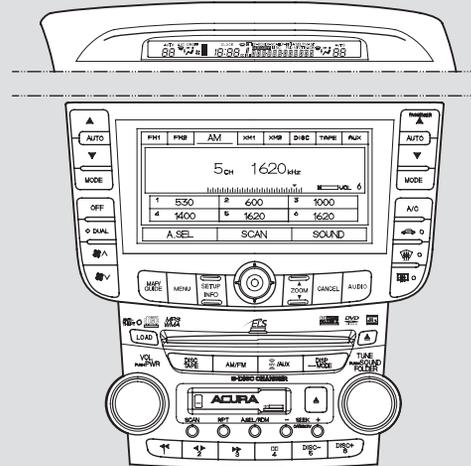
The climate control system has a temperature sensor next to the steering column. Do not cover the sensor or spill any liquid on it.

Audio System

Models without navigation system

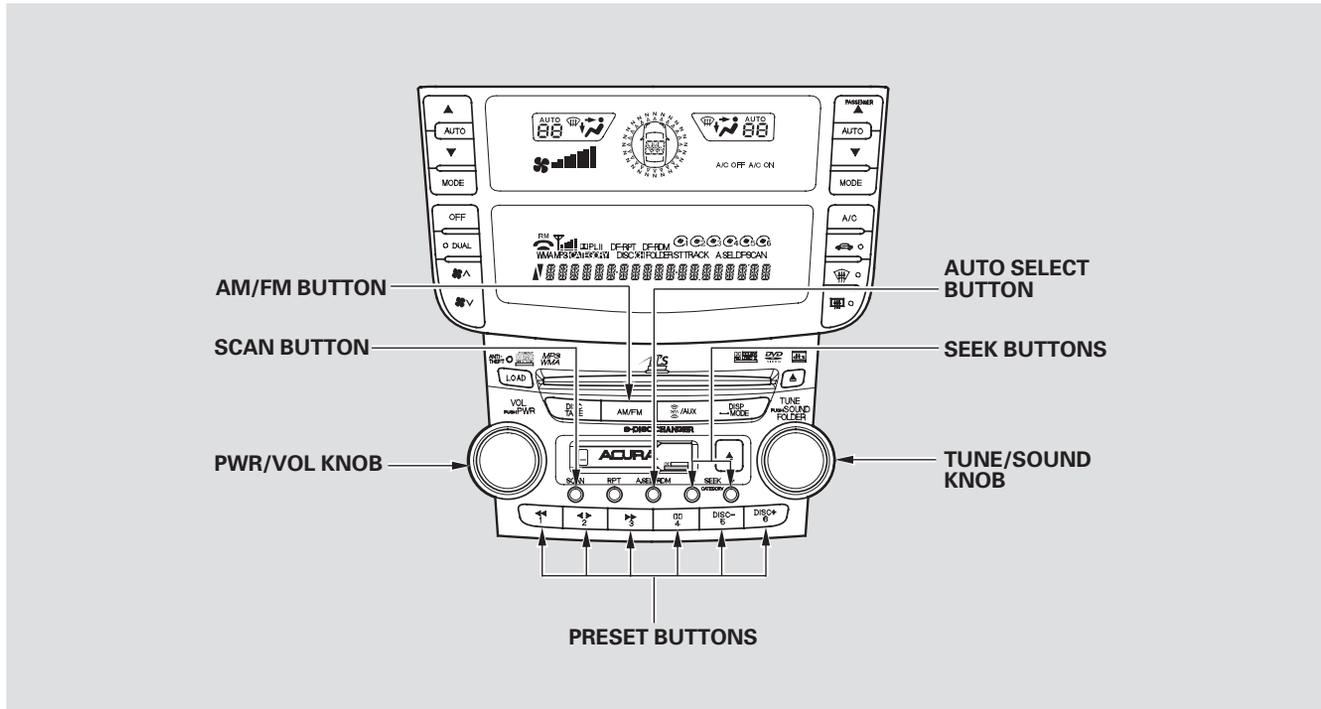


Models with navigation system



Features

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)



Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

Playing the AM/FM Radio

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. Turn the system on by pushing the power/volume knob or the AM/FM button. Adjust the volume by turning the power/volume knob.

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to are displayed. To change bands, press the AM/FM button. On the FM band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Selecting a Station

You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: tune, seek, scan, the preset buttons, and auto select.

TUNE – Use the TUNE knob to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Turn the knob to the right to tune a higher frequency, and turn it to the left to tune a lower frequency.

SEEK – The seek function searches up and down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press the + or – SEEK button, then release it.

SCAN – The scan function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. You will see SCAN in the display. The system will scan for a station with a strong signal. When it finds one, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds.

If you do nothing, the system will scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the SCAN button again.

CONTINUED

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

Preset — Each preset button can store one frequency on AM and two frequencies on FM.

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store two frequencies with each preset button.
2. Use the tune, seek, or scan function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick a preset button, and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve stations on FM.

AUTO SELECT — If you are traveling far from home and can no longer receive your preset stations, you can use the auto select feature to find stations in the local area.

Press the A. SEL button. You will see A. SEL flashing in the display, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds. It stores the frequencies of six AM, and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons.

You will see a “0” displayed after pressing a preset button if auto select cannot find a strong station for every preset button.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can store other frequencies on the preset buttons as previously described.

To turn off auto select, press the A. SEL button. This restores the presets you originally set.

For information on AM/FM radio frequencies and reception, see page 178.

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

Adjusting the Sound

Bass, treble, balance, and fader are each adjustable. In addition, you can adjust the strength of the sound coming from the center and the subwoofer speakers.

Press the TUNE/SOUND knob repeatedly to display the bass, treble, balance, fader, center and subwoofer setting.

Each mode is shown in the display as it changes. Turn the TUNE/SOUND knob to adjust the setting to your liking. When the level reaches the center, you will see “C” in the display. The system will automatically return the display to the selected audio mode about 5 seconds after you stop adjusting a mode.

Treble/Bass — Use the TREB/BASS modes to adjust the tone to your liking.

Balance/Fader — These two modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. BAL adjust the side-to-side strength, and FADE adjusts the front-to-back strength.

Center/Subwoofer — These two modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from the center speaker and the subwoofer speaker.

If you turn the TUNE/SOUND knob all the way to the left, you will see “OFF” in the display, and the center speaker and/or subwoofer speaker will be off.

CONTINUED

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

SVC – Adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed.

Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation (SVC)

The SVC mode controls the volume based on vehicle speed. The faster you go, the louder the audio volume becomes. As you slow down, the audio volume decreases.

The SVC has four modes; SVC OFF, SVC LOW, SVC MID, and SVC HIGH. Turn the TUNE knob to adjust the setting to your liking. If you feel the sound is too loud, choose low. If you feel the sound is too quiet, choose high.

This function is set to MID as the default setting when the vehicle leaves the factory.

Dolby PL (Prologic) II* – Dolby PL (Prologic) II signal processing creates multi-channel surround sound from the audio signal recorded with two channel stereo sources. Dolby prologic II can only activate when using the CD (CD-DA, MP3/WMA), XM radio, and AUX audio modes. When it activates, “DPL II” is shown on the upper display.

*Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. “Dolby”, “ProLogic”, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

Audio System Lighting

You can use the instrument panel brightness control buttons to adjust the illumination of the audio system (see page 89). The audio system illuminates when the parking lights are on, even if the radio is off.

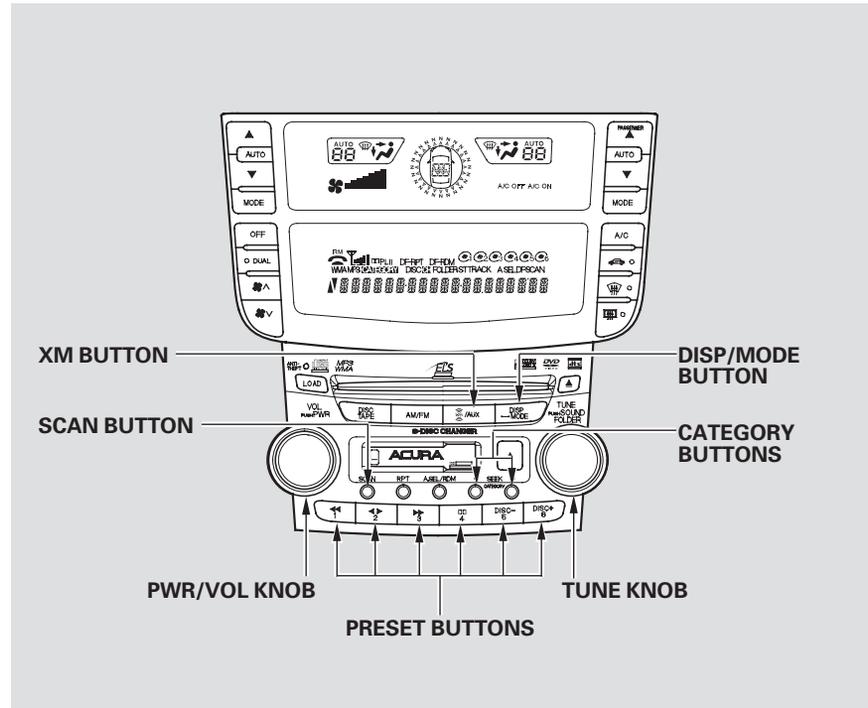
Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

Playing the XM® Satellite Radio

Your audio system is capable of receiving XM® Satellite Radio anywhere in the United States, except Hawaii and Alaska. XM Satellite Radio is also available on Canadian models.

XM® is a registered trademark of XM Satellite Radio, Inc.

XM radio receives signals from two satellites to produce clear, high-quality digital reception. It offers many channels in several categories. Along with a large selection of different types of music, XM radio allows you to view channel and category selections in the display.



Features

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

Operating the XM Radio

To listen to XM radio, turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position. Push the power/volume knob to turn on the audio system, and press the “XM” button. Adjust the volume by turning the knob. The last channel you listened to will show in the display.

MODE — To switch between channel mode and category mode, press and hold the DISP/MODE button until the mode changes.

In the channel mode, you can select all of the available channels. In the category mode, such as Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc., you can select all of the channels within that category.

Each time you press and release the DISP/MODE button, the display changes in the following sequence: channel name, channel number, category, artist name, and music title.

You may experience periods when XM Radio does not transmit the artist’s name and song title information. If this happens, there is nothing wrong with your system.

TUNE — Turn the TUNE knob left or right to select channels. In the category mode, you can only select channels within that category.

CATEGORY (⊖ or ⊕) — In any mode, press either button to select another category.

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

SCAN — The scan function gives you sampling of all channels while in the channel mode. In the category mode, only the stations within that category are scanned. To activate scan, press the SCAN button. The system plays each channel in numerical order for 10 seconds, then selects the next channel. When you hear a channel you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN button again.

Preset — You can store up to 12 preset channels using the six preset buttons. Each button stores one channel from the XM1 band and one channel from the XM2 band.

To store a channel:

1. Press the XM button. Either XM1 or XM2 will show in the display.
2. Use the TUNE knob, or the CATEGORY or SCAN buttons to tune to a desired channel.

In category mode, only channels within that category can be selected. In channel mode, all channels can be selected.

3. Pick the preset button you want for that channel. Press and hold the button until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to store the first six channels.
5. Press the XM button again. The other XM band will show. Store the next six channels using steps 2 and 3.

Once a channel is stored, simply press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

XM Radio Display Messages

“LOADING” – XM is loading the audio or program information.

“OFF AIR” – The channel currently selected is no longer broadcasting.

“UPDATING” – The encryption code is being updated. Wait until the encryption code is fully updated. Channels 0 and 1 should still work normally.

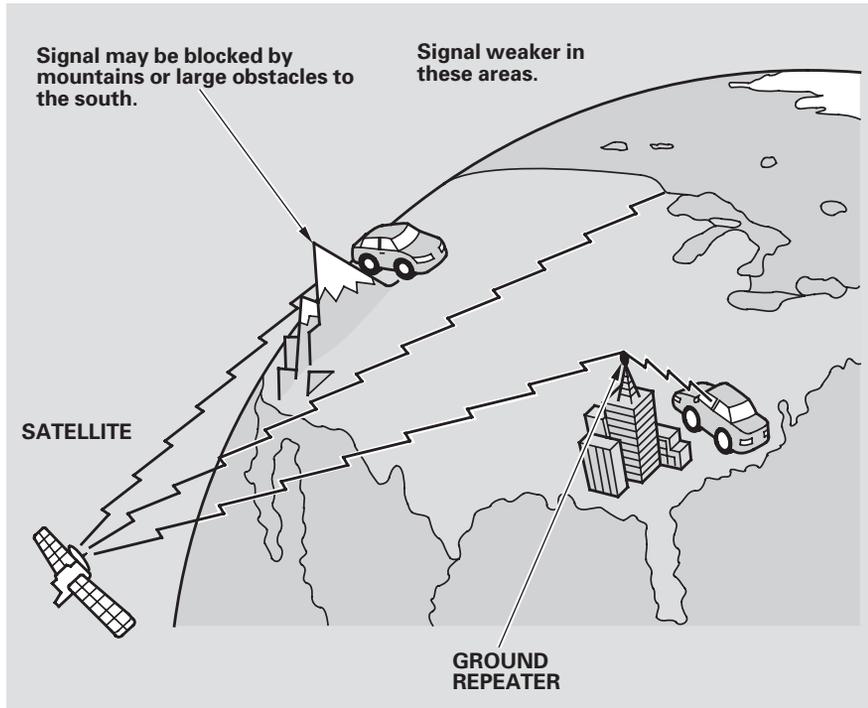
“NO SIGNAL” – The signal is currently too weak. Move the vehicle to an area away from tall buildings, and with an unobstructed view of the southern horizon.

“ - - - - ” – The selected channel number does not exist or is not part of your subscription.

“NO INFO” – The selected channel has no artist or title information at this time.

“ANTENNA” – There is a problem with the XM antenna. Please consult your dealer.

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)



The XM satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. To help compensate for this, ground-based repeaters are placed in major metropolitan areas.

Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator. Carrying large items on a roof rack can also block the signal.

Features

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

Depending on where you drive, you may experience reception problems. Interference can be caused by any of these conditions:

- Driving on the north side of an east/west mountain road.
- Driving on the north side of a large commercial truck on an east/west road.
- Driving in tunnels.
- Driving on a road beside a vertical wall, steep cliff, or hill to the south of you.
- Driving on the lower level of a multi-tiered road.
- Driving on a single lane road alongside dense trees taller than 50 ft. (15 m) to the south of you.

There may be other geographic situations that could affect XM radio reception.

*As required by the FCC:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

Receiving Satellite Radio Service

If your XM Radio service has expired or you purchased your vehicle from a previous owner, you can listen to a sampling of the broadcasts available on XM Satellite Radio. With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, push the power/volume knob to turn on the audio system and press the XM RADIO button. A variety of music types and styles will play.

If you decide to purchase XM satellite radio service, contact XM Radio at www.xmradio.com, or at 1-800-852-9696. You will need to give them your radio I.D. number and your credit card number. To get your radio I.D. number, turn the TUNE

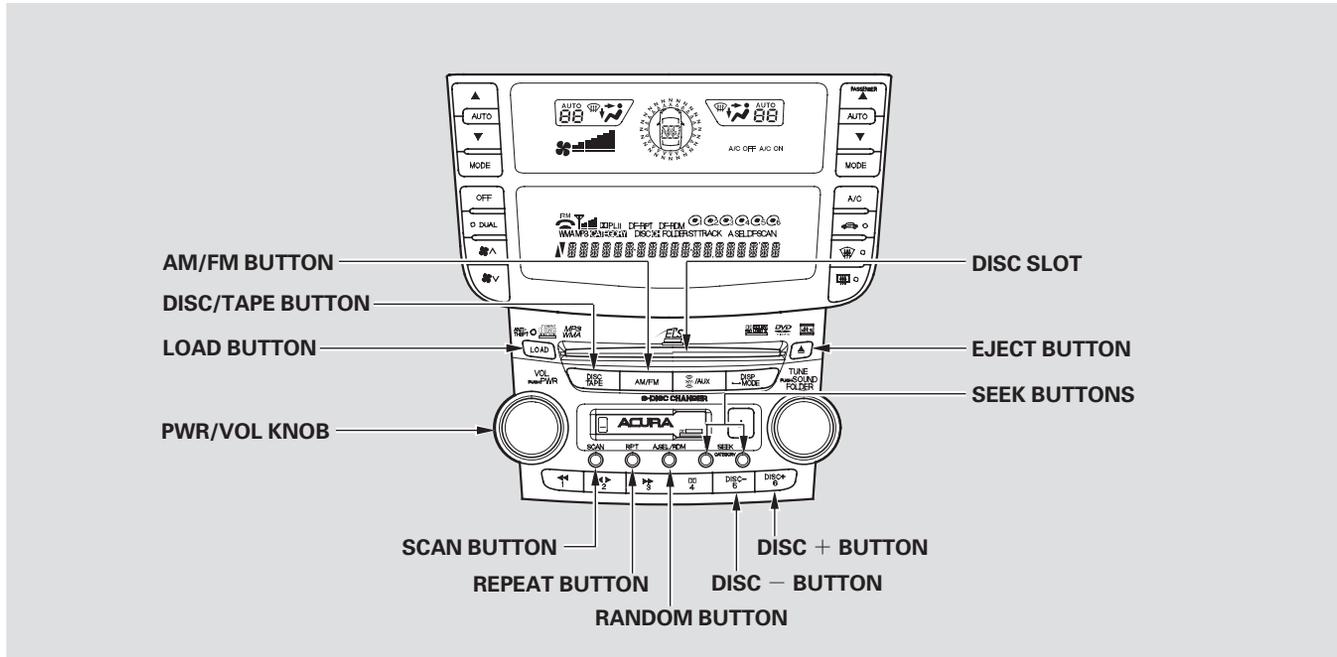
knob until "0" appears in the display. Your I.D. will appear in the display.

After you've registered with XM Radio, keep your audio system in the Satellite Radio mode while you wait for activation. This should take about 30 minutes.

While waiting for activation, make sure your vehicle remains in an open area with good reception. Once your audio system is activated, you should be able to listen to XM radio broadcasts. XM Radio will continue to send an activation signal to your vehicle for at least 12 hours from the activation request. If the service has not been activated after 36 hours, contact XM Radio.

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

Operating the Disc Changer



Features

CONTINUED

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

Your vehicle's audio system has an in-dash disc changer that holds up to six discs. You operate this disc changer with the same controls used for the radio. To operate the disc changer, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

The disc changer can play these disc formats:

- CD
- CD-R
- DVD-A
- DTS™

“DTS” and “DTS Digital Surround” are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

This audio system can also play CD-Rs and CD-RWs compressed in MP3 or WMA formats. When playing a disc in MP3, you will see “MP3” in the display. In WMA format, “WMA” will appear in the display. You can select up to 255 folders or tracks.

NOTE:

If a file on an MP3 or WMA disc is protected by digital rights management (DRM), the audio unit displays FORMAT, and then skips to the next file.

The specifications of the compatible MP3 file are:

- Sampling frequency: 32/44.1/48 kHz (MPEG1)
16/22.05/24 kHz (MPEG2)
- Bit rate: 32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160/192/224/256/320 kbps (MPEG1), 8/16/24/32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/144/160 kbps (MPEG2)

- Compatible with variable bit rate and multi-session.
- Maximum layers (including ROOT): 8 layers

The specifications of the compatible WMA file are:

- Sampling frequency: 32/44.1/48 kHz
- Bit rate: 48/64/80/96/128/160/192 kbps
- Compatible with variable bit rate and multi-session.
- Maximum layers (including ROOT): 8 layers

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

Loading Discs in the Changer

To load multiple discs in one operation:

1. With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, press and hold the LOAD button until you hear a beep and see "LOAD" in the display, then release the button.
2. Insert a disc into the slot. Insert it only about halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way.
3. When the "DISC LOAD" appears in the display, insert the next disc into the slot.
4. Repeat this until all six positions are loaded. The system will then begin playing the last disc loaded.

If you stop loading discs before all six positions are filled, the system will wait for 15 seconds, stop the load operation, and begin playing the last disc loaded.

To load a single disc:

1. Press and release the LOAD button.
2. The disc number for an empty position is highlighted and the green load indicator comes on. When you see "LOAD" in the display, insert the disc into the slot. Insert it only about halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way.

If you press the LOAD button while a disc is playing, the system will stop playing that disc and start the loading sequence. It will then play the disc just loaded.

Playing a Disc

Select the disc changer by pressing the DISC/TAPE button. The system will begin playing the last selected disc in the disc changer. You will see the disc and track numbers displayed.

To select a different disc when all six positions are loaded, press the corresponding number on the preset buttons.

Features

CONTINUED

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

Text Data Display Function

Each time you press the DISP button, the display shows you the text data on a disc, if the disc was recorded with text data.

You can see the album, artist, and track name in the display. If a disc is recorded in MP3 or WMA, you can see the folder and file name, and the album, artist, and track tag.

With the folder name, you will see the FOLDER indicator in the display. The TRACK indicator is shown with the file or track name.

The display shows up to about 16 characters of selected text data (the folder name, file name, etc.). If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 15 characters and the > indicator in the display. Press and hold the DISP button until the next 16 characters are shown.

You will also see some text data under these conditions:

- When a new folder, file, or track is selected.
- When you change the audio mode to play a disc with text data or in MP3 or WMA.
- When you insert a disc, and the system begins to play.

When loading a CD-DA with text data, the album and track name are shown in the display. With a disc in MP3 or WMA, the display shows the folder and file name.

To Change or Select Tracks/Files

Use the SEEK + or SEEK - button while a disc is playing to select passages and change tracks (files in MP3/WMA mode).

SEEK - Each time you press and release the SEEK + button, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next track (file in MP3 or WMA). Press and release the SEEK - button to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

In MP3 or WMA mode

FOLDER SELECTION – To select a different folder, turn the TUNE knob to move to the beginning of the next folder. Turn the knob to the right to skip to the next folder, and to the left to move to the beginning of the current folder. Turn it again to skip to the beginning of the previous folder. Turning the TUNE knob more than one click skips several folders at a time.

REPEAT (TRACK/FILE REPEAT) – To continuously replay a track (files in MP3 or WMA mode), press and release the RPT button. You will see RPT in the display. Press and hold the RPT button for 2 seconds to turn it off.

In MP3 or WMA mode

FOLDER-REPEAT – This feature, when activated, replays all files on the selected folder in the order they are compressed. To activate folder repeat, press the RPT button twice. You will see F-RPT in the display. The system continuously replays the current folder. To turn off folder repeat, press the RPT button for 2 seconds, or push it twice.

Each time you press and release the RPT button, the mode changes from file repeat to folder repeat, then to normal playing.

DISC REPEAT – When you press the RPT button three times, D-RPT appears in the display, and the system continuously replays the current disc. To turn this feature off, press the RPT button or touch DISC RPT again.

RANDOM (Random within a disc/folder) – This feature plays the tracks within a disc (the files within a folder in MP3 or WMA mode) in random order. To activate random play in CD-DA format, press and release the RDM button. In MP3 or WMA mode, press the RDM button to activate random play within a folder. You will see F-RDM in the display. To return to normal play, press the RPT button for 2 seconds, or push it twice.

Features

CONTINUED

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

In MP3 or WMA mode

FOLDER-RANDOM — This feature, when activated, plays all files in each folder in random order. To activate folder random, press the RDM button twice. You will see RDM in the display. The system will then select and play files randomly. This continues until you deactivate folder random by pressing the RDM button again, or by selecting a different folder with the TUNE knob.

SCAN (TRACK/FILE SCAN) — The scan function samples all tracks (files in MP3 or WMA) on the disc in the order they are recorded on the disc. To activate scan, press the SCAN button. In MP3 or WMA mode, press the SCAN button to select SCAN. You will see SCAN in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of each track/file on the disc. Press the SCAN button again to get out of scan mode and play the last track/file sampled.

In MP3 or WMA mode

F-SCAN (FOLDER SCAN) — This feature, when activated, samples the first file of each folder on the disc. To activate folder scan, press the SCAN button twice. You will see F-SCAN in the display.

The system plays the first file in the first folder for about 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then play the first files in the remaining folders for 10 seconds each. After playing the first file of the last folder, the system plays normally.

To turn folder scan off, press either SEEK button, select a different folder with the TUNE knob, or press the SCAN button.

To Stop Playing a Disc

To take the system out of disc mode, press the AM/FM button, or insert a tape in the tape player. To return to disc mode, press the DISC/TAPE button.

If you turn the system off while a disc is playing, either with the power/volume knob or by turning off the ignition switch, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the disc will begin playing where it left off.

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

Removing Discs from the Changer

To remove the disc that is currently playing, press the eject button. You will see "EJECT" in the display. When you remove the disc from the slot, the system automatically begins the load sequence so you can load another disc in that position. If you do not load another disc within 10 seconds, the system selects the previous mode (AM, FM1, FM2, tape, or XM Radio).

If you do not remove the disc from the slot, the system reloads it after 10 seconds and puts the changer in pause mode. To begin playing the disc, press the DISC/TAPE button.

To remove a different disc from the changer, first select it by pressing the corresponding number on the preset button. When that disc begins playing, press the eject button.

When you press the eject button while listening to the radio, or with the audio system turned off, the disc that was last selected is ejected. After that disc is ejected, pressing the eject button again will eject the next disc in numerical order. By doing this six times, you can remove all the discs from the changer.

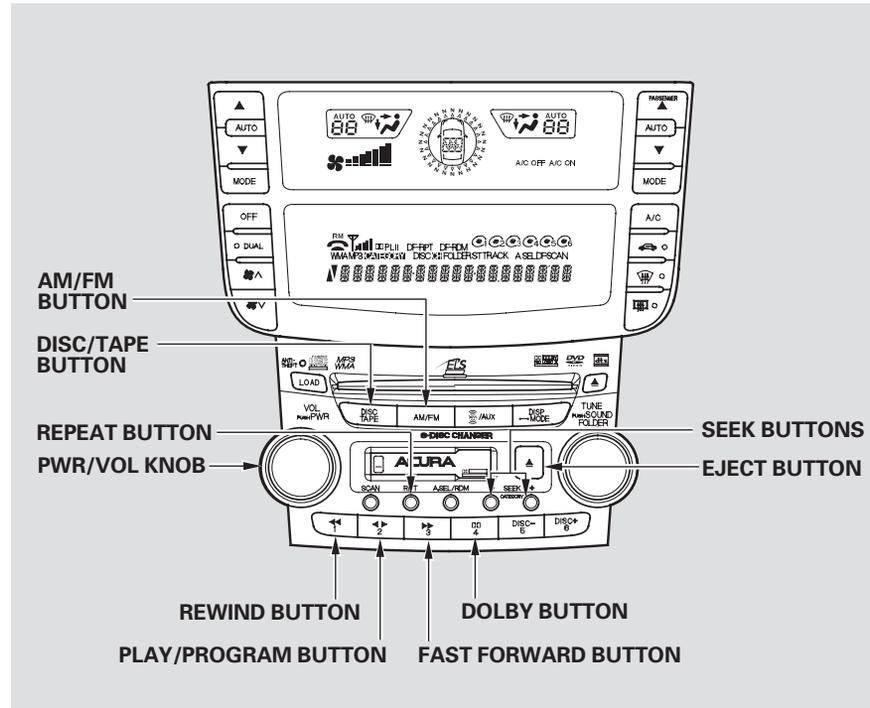
You can also eject discs when the ignition switch is off:
To eject one disc, press and release the eject button.
To eject all discs, press and hold the eject button until the system beeps.

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

Playing a Tape

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position. Make sure the open side of the tape is facing right, then insert the tape most of the way into the slot. The system will pull the tape in the rest of the way and begin to play it.

The tape direction indicator in the display comes on to show you which side of the tape is playing. The ▲ indicates the side you inserted upward is now playing. If you want to play the other side, press the PLAY/PROG (preset 2) button. When the player reaches the end of the tape, it will automatically reverse direction and play the other side.



Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

Dolby* noise reduction turns on when you insert a tape. The  indicator will come on in the display. If the tape was not recorded in Dolby, turn it off by pressing the  (preset 4) button. Dolby remains off until you press the button again.

* Dolby noise reduction is manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. "DOLBY" and the double-D symbol  are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

To Stop Playing a Tape

To remove the tape, press the eject button. If you want to turn the player off, press the power/volume knob or turn off the ignition. The tape will remain in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the tape will begin playing where it left off.

To switch to the AM/FM radio, XM Radio, or disc changer while a tape is playing, press the AM/FM button, XM button, or DISC/TAPE button. To change back to the tape player, press the DISC/TAPE button.

Tape Search Functions

FF/REW – To rewind the tape, push the  (preset 1) button. You will see REW in the display. To fast forward the tape, push the  (preset 3) button. You will see FF displayed. Press the , , or PLAY/PROG button to take the system out of rewind or fast forward.

SKIP – Press the SEEK – button to find the beginning of the current song or passage. Press the SEEK + button to find the beginning of the next song or passage. When the system reaches the beginning of a song or passage, it begins to play it.

REPEAT – Press the RPT button to continuously play a song or passage. You will see RPT displayed. The track will repeat until you press the RPT button again.

CONTINUED

Audio System (Models without Navigation System)

NOTE: The skip and repeat functions use silent periods on the tape to find the end of a song or passage. These features may not work if there is almost no gap between selections, a high noise level, or a silent period in the middle of a selection.

Caring for the Player and Tapes

The tape player picks up dirt and oxides from the tape. This contamination builds up over time and causes the sound quality to degrade. To prevent this, you should clean the player after every 30 hours of use.

If you do not clean the tape player regularly, it may eventually become impossible to remove the contamination with a normal cleaning kit. Your dealer has a cleaning kit available.

Use 100-minute or shorter tapes. Tapes longer than that may break or jam in the drive.

If the tape is loose, tighten it by turning the hub with a pencil or your finger. If the label is peeling off, remove it or it could cause the tape to jam in the player. Never try to insert a warped or damaged tape in the player.

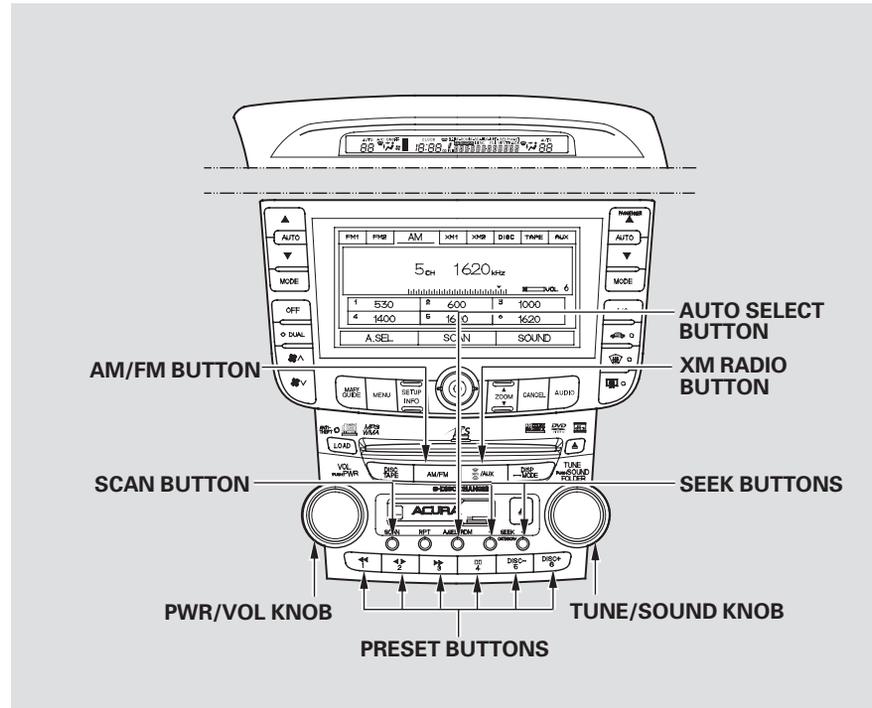
Store tapes in their cases to protect them from dust and moisture. Never place tapes where they will be exposed to direct sunlight, high heat, or high humidity. If a tape is exposed to extreme heat or cold, let it reach a moderate temperature before inserting it into the player.

Never try to insert foreign objects into the tape player.

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Voice Control System

In addition to the standard audio controls, the audio system in your vehicle can be operated using the voice control system. See the navigation section in your quick start guide for an overview of this system, and the navigation system manual for complete details.



Features

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Playing the AM/FM Radio

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. Turn the system on by pushing the power/volume knob or the AM/FM button. Adjust the volume by turning the power/volume knob.

You can also operate the audio system using the control icons on the audio screen.

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to are displayed. To change bands, press the AM/FM button. On the FM band, STEREO will be displayed on the audio screen if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Selecting a Station

You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: tune, seek, scan, the preset buttons, and auto select.

TUNE – Use the TUNE knob to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Turn the knob to the right to tune a higher frequency, and turn it to the left to tune a lower frequency.

SEEK – The seek function searches up and down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press the + or – SEEK button, then release it.

SCAN – The scan function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. You will see SCAN in the display. The system will scan for a station with a strong signal. When it finds one, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds.

If you do nothing, the system will scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the SCAN button again.

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Preset — Each preset button can store one frequency on AM and two frequencies on FM.

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store two frequencies with each preset button.
2. Use the tune, seek, or scan function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick a preset button, and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve stations on FM.

Each preset button's frequency is shown on the bottom of the audio display.

AUTO SELECT — If you are traveling far from home and can no longer receive your preset stations, you can use the auto select feature to find stations in the local area.

Press the A. SEL button. You will see A. SEL flashing in the display, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds. It stores the frequencies of six AM, and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons.

You will see a "0" displayed after pressing a preset button if auto select cannot find a strong station for every preset button.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can store other frequencies on the preset buttons as previously described.

To turn off auto select, press the A. SEL button. This restores the presets you originally set.

For information on AM/FM radio frequencies and reception, see page 178 .

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

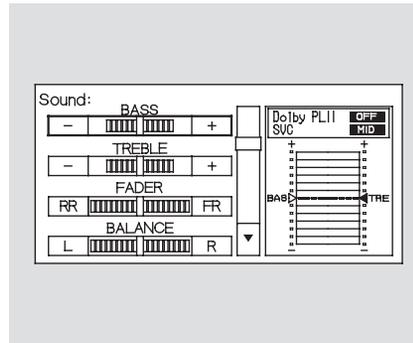
Adjusting the Sound

Bass, treble, left/right balance, and front/rear fader are each adjustable. In addition, you can adjust the strength of the sound coming from the center and the subwoofer speakers.

To adjust them, enter the sound grid by touching the SOUND icon on the display or pressing the TUNE/SOUND knob.

Treble/Bass – To adjust the treble and bass, touch – or + icon on each side of the treble or bass adjustment bar, or tune the TUNE/SOUND knob.

Balance – Adjusts the side-to-side strength of the sound. To adjust the left/right balance, touch the L or R icon.



Fader – Adjusts the front-to-back strength of the sound. To adjust the front/rear fader, touch the FR or RR icon.

Center/Subwoofer – To adjust the strength of the sound coming from the center or subwoofer speaker, touch the – or + icon on each side of the center or subwoofer adjustment bar.

SVC (speed-sensitive volume compensation)

– The SVC mode controls the volume based on vehicle speed. The faster you go, the louder the audio volume becomes. As you slow down, the audio volume decreases. Touch the appropriate icon (Low, Mid, Hi, Off) to select the mode.

Dolby PL (ProLogic) II* – Dolby PL (ProLogic) II signal processing creates multi-channel surround sound from the audio signal recorded with two channel stereo sources. Dolby ProLogic II can only activate when using the CD (CD-DA, MP3/WMA), XM radio, and AUX audio modes. When it activates, “DPL2” is shown on the upper display. To turn this feature on or off, touch the On or Off icon.

*Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. “Dolby”, “ProLogic”, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

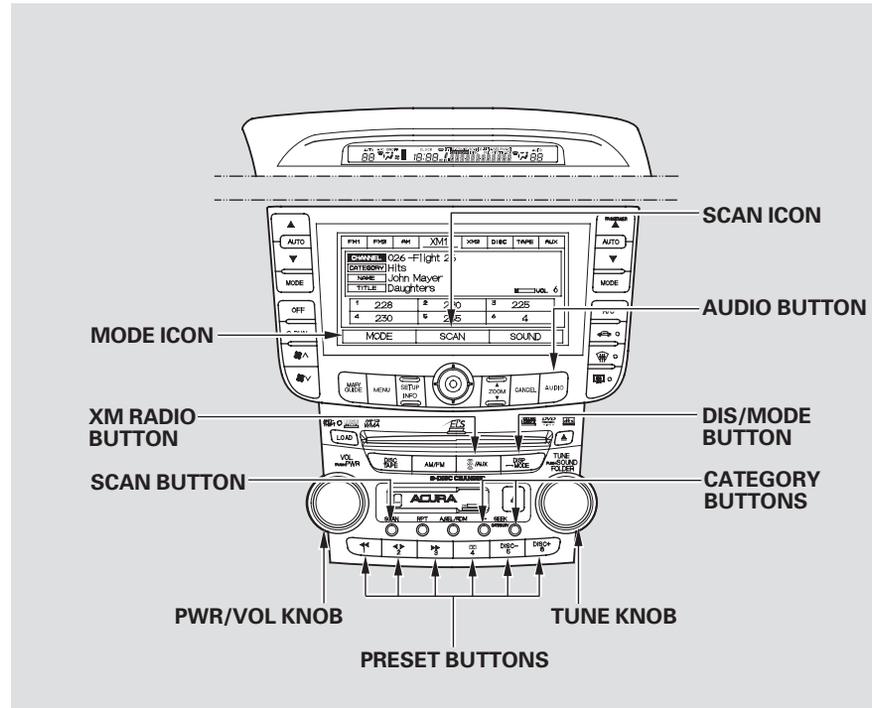
Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Playing the XM® Satellite Radio

Your audio system is capable of receiving XM® Satellite Radio anywhere in the United States, except Hawaii and Alaska. XM Satellite Radio is also available on Canadian models.

XM® is a registered trademark of XM Satellite Radio, Inc.

XM radio receives signals from two satellites to produce clear, high-quality digital reception. It offers many channels in several categories. Along with a large selection of different types of music, XM radio allows you to view channel and category selections in the display.



Features

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Operating the XM Radio

To listen to XM radio, turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position. Push the power/volume knob to turn on the audio system, and press the “XM” button. Adjust the volume by turning the knob. The last channel you listened to will show in the display.

MODE — To switch between the channel mode and the category mode, press and hold the DISP/MODE button until the mode changes, or touch the MODE icon on the audio display.

In the channel mode, you can select all of the available channels. In the category mode, such as Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc., you can select all of the channels within that category.

Each time you press and release the DISP/MODE button, the display changes in the following sequence: channel name, channel number, category, artist name, and music title.

You may experience periods when XM Radio does not transmit the artist’s name and song title information. If this happens, there is nothing wrong with your system.

TUNE — Turn the TUNE knob left or right to select channels. In the category mode, you can only select channels within that category.

CATEGORY (⊖ or ⊕) — In any mode, press either button to select another category.

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

SCAN — The scan function gives you a sampling of all channels while in the channel mode. In the category mode, only the stations within that category are scanned. To activate scan, press the SCAN button or touch the SCAN icon on the audio display. The system plays each channel in numerical order for 10 seconds. When you hear a channel you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN button or touch the icon again.

Preset — You can store up to 12 preset channels using the six preset buttons or preset icons. Each button stores one channel from the XM1 band and one channel from the XM2 band.

To store a channel:

1. Press the XM button. Either XM1 or XM2 will show in the display.
2. Use the TUNE knob, or the CATEGORY or SCAN buttons to tune to a desired channel.

In category mode, only channels within that category can be selected. In channel mode, all channels can be selected.

3. Pick the preset button (icon) you want for that channel. Press and hold the button (icon) until you hear a beep.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to store the first six channels.

5. Press the XM button again. The other XM band will show. Store the next six channels using steps 2 and 3.

Once a channel is stored, simply press and release the proper preset button (icon) to tune to it.

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

XM Radio Display Messages

“LOADING” – XM is loading the audio or program information.

“OFF AIR” – The channel currently selected is no longer broadcasting.

“UPDATING” – The encryption code is being updated. Wait until the encryption code is fully updated. Channels 0 and 1 should still work normally.

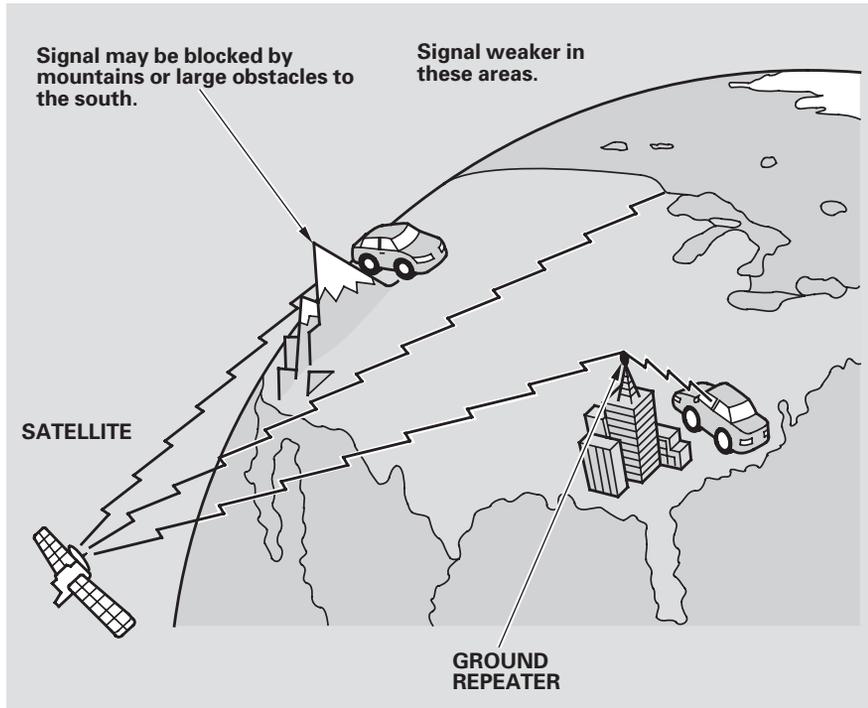
“NO SIGNAL” – The signal is currently too weak. Move the vehicle to an area away from tall buildings, and with an unobstructed view of the southern horizon.

“ - - - - ” – The selected channel number does not exist or is not part of your subscription.

“NO INFO” – The selected channel has no artist or title information at this time.

“ANTENNA” – There is a problem with the XM antenna. Please consult your dealer.

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)



The XM satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. To help compensate for this, ground-based repeaters are placed in major metropolitan areas.

Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator. Carrying large items on a roof rack can also block the signal.

Features

CONTINUED

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Depending on where you drive, you may experience reception problems. Interference can be caused by any of these conditions:

- Driving on the north side of an east/west mountain road.
- Driving on the north side of a large commercial truck on an east/west road.
- Driving in tunnels.
- Driving on a road beside a vertical wall, steep cliff, or hill to the south of you.
- Driving on the lower level of a multi-tiered road.
- Driving on a single lane road alongside dense trees taller than 50 ft. (15 m) to the south of you.

There may be other geographic situations that could affect XM radio reception.

*As required by the FCC:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

Receiving Satellite Radio Service

If your XM Radio service has expired or you purchased your vehicle from a previous owner, you can listen to a sampling of the broadcasts available on XM Satellite Radio. With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, push the power/volume knob to turn on the audio system and press the XM RADIO button. A variety of music types and styles will play.

If you decide to purchase XM satellite radio service, contact XM Radio at www.xmradio.com, or at 1-800-852-9696. You will need to give them your radio I.D. number and your credit card number. To get your radio I.D. number, turn the TUNE

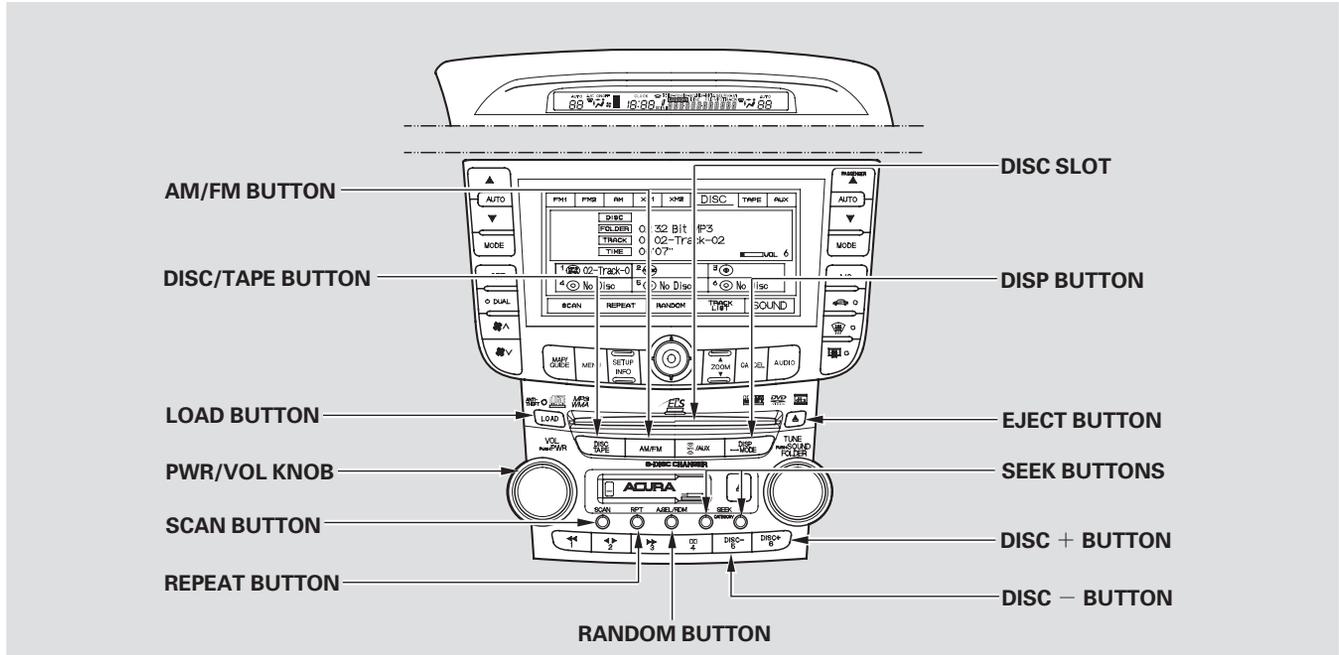
knob until "0" appears in the display. Your I.D. will appear in the display.

After you've registered with XM Radio, keep your audio system in the Satellite Radio mode while you wait for activation. This should take about 30 minutes.

While waiting for activation, make sure your vehicle remains in an open area with good reception. Once your audio system is activated, you should be able to listen to XM radio broadcasts. XM Radio will continue to send an activation signal to your vehicle for at least 12 hours from the activation request. If the service has not been activated after 36 hours, contact XM Radio.

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Operating the Disc Changer



Features

CONTINUED

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Your vehicle's audio system has an in-dash disc changer that holds up to six discs. You operate this disc changer with the same controls used for the radio. To operate the disc changer, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

The disc changer can play these disc formats:

CD
CD-R
DVD-A
DTS™

“DTS” and “DTS Digital Surround” are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

This audio system can also play CD-Rs and CD-RWs compressed in MP3 or WMA formats. When playing a disc in MP3, you will see “MP3” in the display. In WMA format, “WMA” will appear in the display. You can select up to 255 folders or tracks.

NOTE:

If a file on an MP3 or WMA disc is protected by digital rights management (DRM), the audio unit displays FORMAT, and then skips to the next file.

The specifications of the compatible MP3 file are:

- Sampling frequency: 32/44.1/48 kHz (MPEG1)
16/22.05/24 kHz (MPEG2)
- Bit rate: 32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160/192/224/256/320 kbps (MPEG1), 8/16/24/32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/144/160 kbps (MPEG2)

- Compatible with variable bit rate and multi-session.
- Maximum layers (including ROOT): 8 layers

The specifications of the compatible WMA file are:

- Sampling frequency: 32/44.1/48 kHz
- Bit rate: 48/64/80/96/128/160/192 kbps
- Compatible with variable bit rate and multi-session.
- Maximum layers (including ROOT): 8 layers

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Loading Discs in the Changer

To load multiple discs in one operation:

1. With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, press and hold the LOAD button until you hear a beep and see "LOAD" in the display, then release the button.
2. Insert a disc into the slot. Insert it only about halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way.
3. When the "DISC LOAD" appears in the display, insert the next disc into the slot.
4. Repeat this until all six positions are loaded. The system will then begin playing the last disc loaded.

If you stop loading discs before all six positions are filled, the system will wait for 15 seconds, stop the load operation, and begin playing the last disc loaded.

To load a single disc:

1. Press and release the LOAD button.
2. The disc number for an empty position is highlighted and the green load indicator comes on. When you see "LOAD" in the display, insert the disc into the slot. Insert it only about halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way.

If you press the LOAD button while a disc is playing, the system will stop playing that disc and start the loading sequence. It will then play the disc just loaded.

Playing a Disc

Select the disc changer by pressing the DISC/TAPE button. The system will begin playing the last selected disc in the disc changer. You will see the disc and track numbers displayed.

To select a different disc when all six positions are loaded, press the corresponding number on the preset buttons. You can also select a disc by touching the appropriate disc icon (1 – 6).

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Text Data Display Function

Each time you press the DISP button, the display shows you the text data on a disc, if the disc was recorded with text data.

You can see the album, artist, and track name in the display. If a disc is recorded in MP3 or WMA, you can see the folder and file name, and the album, artist, and track tag.

With the folder name, you will see the FOLDER indicator in the display. The TRACK indicator is shown with the file or track name.

The display shows up to about 16 characters of selected text data (the folder name, file name, etc.). If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 15 characters and the > indicator in the display. Press and hold the DISP button until the next 16 characters are shown.

You will also see some text data under these conditions:

- When a new folder, file, or track is selected.
- When you change the audio mode to play a disc with text data or in MP3 or WMA.
- When you insert a disc, and the system begins to play.

When playing a CD-DA with text data, the album and track name are shown in the display. With a disc in MP3 or WMA, the display shows the folder and file name.

To Change or Select Tracks/Files

Use the SEEK + or SEEK - button while a disc is playing to select passages and change tracks (files in MP3/WMA mode).

SEEK - Each time you press and release the SEEK + button, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next track (file in MP3 or WMA). Press and release the SEEK - button to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track.

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

In MP3 or WMA mode

FOLDER SELECTION – To select a different folder, turn the TUNE knob to move to the beginning of the next folder. Turn the knob to the right to skip to the next folder, and to the left to move to the beginning of the current folder. Turn it again to skip to the beginning of the previous folder. Turning the TUNE knob more than one click skips several folders at a time.

REPEAT (TRACK/FILE REPEAT) – To continuously replay a track (files in MP3 or WMA mode), press and release the RPT button or touch the REPEAT icon on the audio screen. You will see RPT in the display. Press and hold the RPT button for 2 seconds to turn it off.

In MP3 or WMA mode

FOLDER-REPEAT – This feature, when activated, replays all files on the selected folder in the order they are compressed. To activate folder repeat, press the RPT button twice. You will see F-RPT in the display. The system continuously replays the current folder. To turn off folder repeat, press the RPT button for 2 seconds, or push it twice.

Each time you press and release the RPT button, the mode changes from file repeat to folder repeat, then to normal playing.

DISC REPEAT – When you press the RPT button three times, D-RPT appears in the display, and the system continuously replays the current disc. To turn this feature off, press the RPT button or touch DISC RPT again.

RANDOM (Random within a disc/folder) – This feature plays the tracks within a disc (the files within a folder in MP3 or WMA mode) in random order. To activate random play in CD-DA format, press and release the RDM button. In MP3 or WMA mode, press the RDM button to activate random play within a folder. You will see F-RDM in the display. To return to normal play, press the RPT button for 2 seconds, or push it twice.

Features

CONTINUED

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

In MP3 or WMA mode

FOLDER-RANDOM – This feature, when activated, plays all files in each folder in random order. To activate folder random, press the RDM button twice. You will see F-RDM in the display. The system will then select and play files randomly. This continues until you deactivate folder random by pressing the RDM button again, or by selecting a different folder with the TUNE knob.

SCAN (TRACK/FILE SCAN) –

The scan function samples all tracks (files in MP3 or WMA) on the disc in the order they are recorded on the disc. To activate scan, press the SCAN button or touch the SCAN icon on the audio screen. In MP3 or WMA mode, press the SCAN button repeatedly to select SCAN. You will see SCAN in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of each track/file on the disc. Press the SCAN button or touch the SCAN icon again to get out of scan mode and play the last track/file sampled.

In MP3 or WMA mode

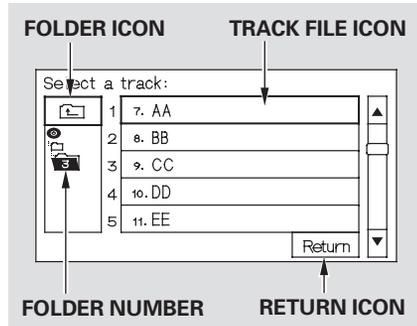
F-SCAN (FOLDER SCAN) – This feature, when activated, samples the first file of each folder on the disc. To activate folder scan, press the SCAN button twice. You will see F-SCAN in the display.

The system plays the first file in the first folder for about 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then play the first files in the remaining folders for 10 seconds each. After playing the first file of the last folder, the system plays normally.

To turn folder scan off, press either SEEK button, select a different folder with the TUNE knob, or press the SCAN button.

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Using a Track List



You can also select a track/file directly from a track list on the audio display. Touch the TRACK LIST icon. The track list menu appears on the audio display.

When playing a CD recorded with text data, each track name is shown on the audio display. With a disc recorded in MP3 or WMA, the folder number and the location are also displayed.

If the disc was not recorded with text data, only the track number is shown.

To scroll through the display, touch the ▲ or ▼ icon on the side of the display. To go back to the previous display, touch the Return icon on the display.

Select the desired track/file by touching the icon on the display. The selected icon will be highlighted in blue. The system begins to play the selected track/file. With a disc in MP3 or WMA, touch the folder icon on the upper left of the screen to move to the parent folder. The current folder is highlighted in blue.

To Stop Playing a Disc

To take the system out of disc mode, press the AM/FM button, or insert a tape in the tape player. To return to disc mode, press the DISC/TAPE button.

If you turn the system off while a disc is playing, either with the power/volume knob or by turning off the ignition switch, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the disc will begin playing where it left off.

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Removing Discs from the Changer

To remove the disc that is currently playing, press the eject button. You will see "EJECT" in the display. When you remove the disc from the slot, the system automatically begins the load sequence so you can load another disc in that position. If you do not load another disc within 15 seconds, the system selects the previous mode (AM, FM1, FM2, tape, or XM Radio).

If you do not remove the disc from the slot, the system will reload the disc after 15 seconds and put the disc changer in pause mode. To begin playing the disc, press the disc button.

To remove a different disc from the changer, first select it by pressing the corresponding number on the preset button or touching the appropriate disc icon on the audio display. When that disc begins playing, press the eject button.

When you press the eject button while listening to the radio, or with the audio system turned off, the disc that was last selected is ejected. After that disc is ejected, pressing the eject button again will eject the next disc in numerical order. By doing this six times, you can remove all the discs from the changer.

You can also eject discs when the ignition switch is off:
To eject one disc, press and release the eject button.
To eject all discs, press and hold the eject button until the system beeps.

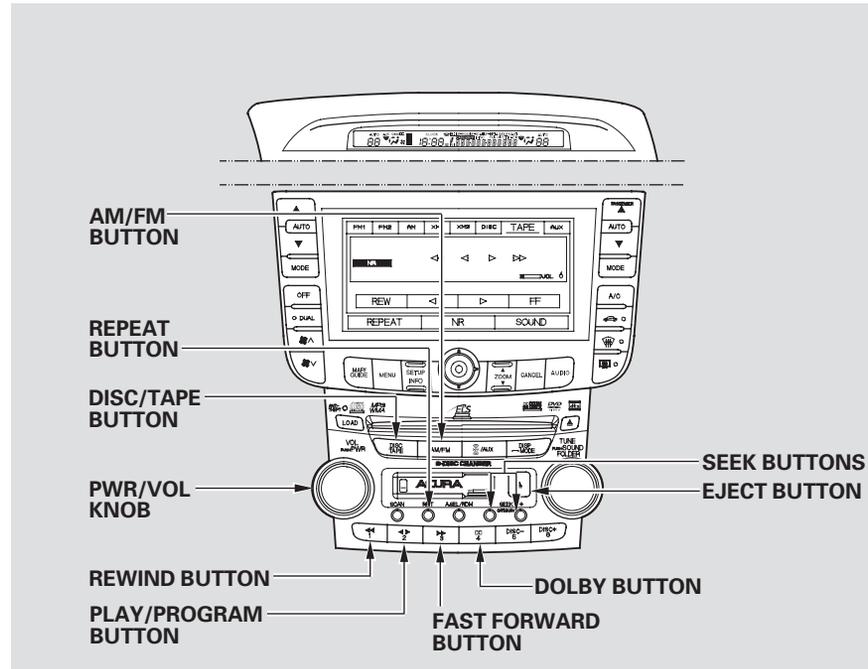
Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Playing a Tape

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position. Make sure the open side of the tape is facing right, then insert the tape most of the way into the slot. The system will pull the tape in the rest of the way and begin to play it.

The tape direction indicator in the display comes on to show you which side of the tape is playing. The

▶ indicates the side you inserted upward is now playing. If you want to play the other side, press the PLAY/PROG (preset 2) button or touch the ◀ or ▶ icon. When the player reaches the end of the tape, it will automatically reverse direction and play the other side.



Features

CONTINUED

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

Dolby* noise reduction turns on when you insert a tape. The “NR” indicator will come on in the display. If the tape was not recorded in Dolby, turn it off by pressing the  (preset 4) button or touch the NR icon. Dolby remains off until you press the button again.

* Dolby noise reduction is manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. “DOLBY” and the double-D symbol  are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

To Stop Playing a Tape

To remove the tape, press the eject button. If you want to turn the player off, press the power/volume knob or turn off the ignition. The tape will remain in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the tape will begin playing where it left off.

To switch to the AM/FM radio, XM Radio, or disc changer while a tape is playing, press the AM/FM button, XM button, or DISC/TAPE button. To change back to the tape player, press the DISC/TAPE button.

Tape Search Functions

FF/REW – To rewind the tape, push the  (preset 1) button or touch the REW on the audio screen. You will see REW in the display. To fast forward the tape, push the  (preset 3) button or touch the FF icon. You will see FF displayed. Press the , , or PLAY/PROG button or touch the REW, FF,  or  icon to take the system out of rewind or fast forward.

SKIP – Press the SEEK – button to find the beginning of the current song or passage. Press the SEEK + button to find the beginning of the next song or passage. When the system reaches the beginning of a song or passage, it begins to play it.

Audio System (Models with Navigation System)

REPEAT — Press the RPT button or touch the REPEAT icon on the audio display to continuously play a song or passage. You will see RPT displayed. The track will repeat until you press the button or touch the icon again.

NOTE: The skip and repeat functions use silent periods on the tape to find the end of a song or passage. These features may not work if there is almost no gap between selections, a high noise level, or a silent period in the middle of a selection.

Caring for the Player and Tapes

The tape player picks up dirt and oxides from the tape. This contamination builds up over time and causes the sound quality to degrade. To prevent this, you should clean the player after every 30 hours of use.

If you do not clean the tape player regularly, it may eventually become impossible to remove the contamination with a normal cleaning kit. Your dealer has a cleaning kit available.

Use 100-minute or shorter tapes. Tapes longer than that may break or jam in the drive.

If the tape is loose, tighten it by turning the hub with a pencil or your finger. If the label is peeling off, remove it or it could cause the tape to jam in the player. Never try to insert a warped or damaged tape in the player.

Store tapes in their cases to protect them from dust and moisture. Never place tapes where they will be exposed to direct sunlight, high heat, or high humidity. If a tape is exposed to extreme heat or cold, let it reach a moderate temperature before inserting it into the player.

Never try to insert foreign objects into the tape player.

Disc Changer Error Messages

The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the display while playing a disc.

If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.

If there is still a problem, the error message will appear again. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc.

Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

Message	Cause	Solution
CODE DISC	FOCUS error.	Press the disc eject button and remove the disc(s). Check for an error indication. Insert the disc(s) again. If the code does not disappear or the disc(s) cannot be removed, consult your dealer.
CODE NODISC	No CD in the changer.	Insert a disc or discs.
CODE ERR	Mechanical error.	Press the disc eject button and remove the disc(s). Check for an error indication. Insert the disc(s) again. If the code does not disappear or the disc(s) cannot be removed, consult your dealer.
CODE ---H	High temperature.	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.

Protecting Your Discs

General Information

- When using CD-R discs, use only high quality discs labeled for audio use.
- When recording a CD-R, the recording must be closed for it to be used by the disc changer.
- Play only standard round discs. Odd-shaped discs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.
- Handle your discs properly to prevent damage and skipping.

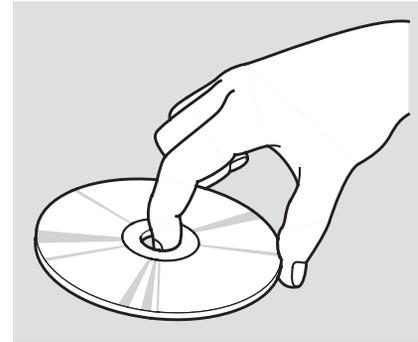
Protecting Discs

When a disc is not being played, store it in its case to protect it from dust and other contamination. To prevent warpage, keep discs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.

To clean a disc, use a clean soft cloth. Wipe across the disc from the center to the outside edge.

A new disc may be rough on the inner and outer edges. The small plastic pieces causing this roughness can flake off and fall on the recording surface of the disc, causing skipping or other problems. Remove these pieces by rubbing the inner and outer edges with the side of a pencil or pen.

Never try to insert foreign objects in the disc changer.



Features

Handle a disc by its edges; never touch either surface. Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the disc. These, along with contamination from finger prints, liquids, and felt-tip pens, can cause the disc to not play properly, or possibly jam in the drive.

AM/FM Radio Reception

Radio Frequencies

Your vehicle's radio can receive the complete AM and FM bands. Those bands cover these frequencies:

AM band: 530 to 1,710 kHz
FM band: 87.7 to 107.9 MHz

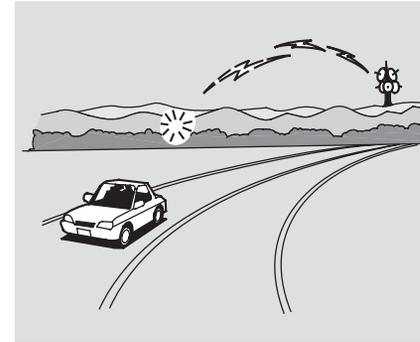
Radio stations on the AM band are assigned frequencies at least 10 kHz apart (530, 540, 550). Stations on the FM band are assigned frequencies at least 0.2 MHz apart (87.9, 88.1, 88.3).

Stations must use these exact frequencies. It is fairly common for stations to round-off the frequency in their advertising, so your radio could display a frequency of 100.9 even though the announcer may identify the station as "FM101."

Radio Reception

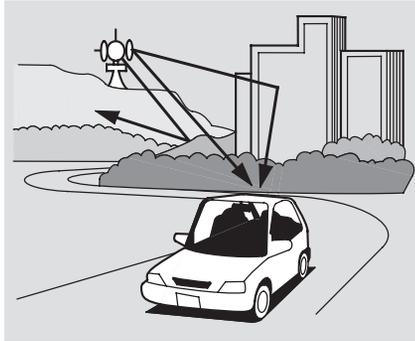
How well your vehicle's radio receives stations is dependent on many factors, such as the distance from the station's transmitter, nearby large objects, and atmospheric conditions.

A radio station's signal gets weaker as you get farther away from its transmitter. If you are listening to an AM station, you will notice the sound volume becoming weaker, and the station drifting in and out. If you are listening to an FM station, you will see the stereo indicator flickering off and on as the signal weakens. Eventually, the stereo indicator will go off and the sound will fade completely as you get out of range of the station's signal.



Driving very near the transmitter of a station that is broadcasting on a frequency close to the frequency of the station you are listening to can also affect your radio's reception. You may temporarily hear both stations, or hear only the station you are close to.

AM/FM Radio Reception



Radio signals, especially on the FM band, are deflected by large objects such as buildings and hills. Your radio then receives both the direct signal from the station's transmitter, and the deflected signal. This causes the sound to distort or flutter. This is a main cause of poor radio reception in city driving.



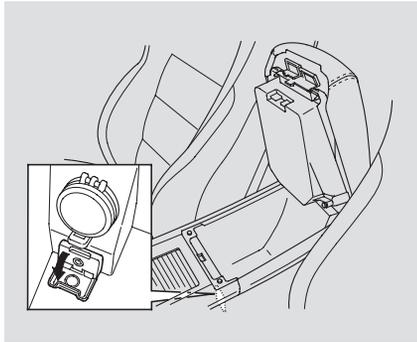
Radio reception can be affected by atmospheric conditions such as thunderstorms, high humidity, and even sunspots. You may be able to receive a distant radio station one day and not receive it the next day because of a change in conditions.

Electrical interference from passing vehicles and stationary sources can cause temporary reception problems.

*As required by the FCC:
Changes or modifications not expressly
approved by the party responsible for
compliance could void the user's
authority to operate the equipment.*

Features

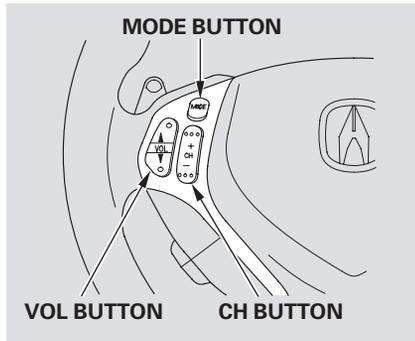
Auxiliary Input Jack



The auxiliary input jack is underneath the accessory power socket in the console compartment. The system will accept auxiliary input from standard audio accessories using a 1/8 inch stereo miniplug.

When a compatible audio unit is connected to the jack, press the AUX button to select it.

Remote Audio Controls



Three controls for the audio system are mounted in the steering wheel hub. These let you control basic functions without removing your hand from the wheel.

The VOL button adjusts the volume up (▲) or down (▼). Press the top or bottom of the button, hold it until the desired volume is reached, then release it.

The MODE button changes the mode. Pressing the button repeatedly selects FM1, FM2, AM, XM Radio (U.S. models), a disc (if a disc is loaded), or a tape (if a tape is loaded).

If you are listening to the radio, use the CH button to change stations. Each time you press the top (+) of the button, the system goes to the next preset station on the band you are listening to. Press the bottom (-) to go back to the previous station.

To activate the seek function, press and hold the top (+) or bottom (-) of the CH button until you hear a beep. The system searches up or down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal.

If you are playing a disc, the system skips to the beginning of the next track (file in MP3 or WMA format) each time you press the top (+) of the CH button. Press the bottom (-) to return to the beginning of the current track or file. Press it twice to return to the previous track or file.

You will see the track/file number and the elapsed time. If the disc has text data or is compressed in MP3 or WMA, you can also see any other information (track title, file name, folder name, etc.).

Features

CONTINUED

Radio Theft Protection

Your vehicle's audio system will disable itself if it is disconnected from electrical power for any reason. To make it work again, you must enter a specific five-digit code in the preset buttons. Because there are hundreds of number combinations possible from five digits, making the system work without knowing the exact code is nearly impossible.

You should have received a card that lists your audio system code number and serial number. It is best to store this card in a safe place at home. In addition, you should write the audio system's serial number in this owner's manual.

If you should happen to lose the card, you must obtain the code number from your dealer. To do this, you will need the system's serial number.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the audio system will disable itself. If this happens, you will see "CODE" in the frequency display the next time you turn on the system. Use the preset buttons to enter the five-digit code. The code is on the radio code card included in your owner's manual kit. When it is entered correctly, the radio will start playing.

If you make a mistake entering the code, do not start over; complete the five-digit sequence, then enter the correct code. You have 10 tries to enter the correct code. If you are unsuccessful in 10 attempts, you must then leave the system on for 1 hour before trying again.

If the code card is lost, your dealer can access your code with your radio's serial number. To access the serial number, turn the radio on. It must display "CODE", then turn the

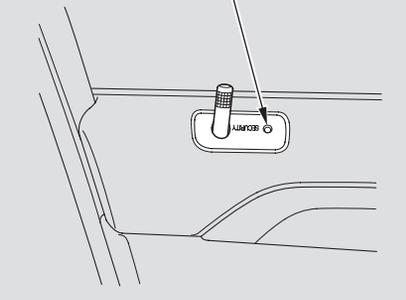
radio off. Push the preset 1, preset 6, and power buttons at the same time, then quickly release. The serial number will appear.

Security System

The security system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables from theft. The horn sounds and a combination of headlights, parking lights, side marker lights and taillights flash if someone attempts to break into your vehicle or remove the radio. This alarm continues for 2 minutes, then the system resets. To reset an alarming system before the 2 minutes have elapsed, unlock the driver's door with the key or use the remote transmitter.

The security system automatically sets 15 seconds after you lock the doors, hood, and trunk. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors from the outside with the key, lock tab, door lock switch, or remote transmitter. The security system indicator next to the driver's door lock starts blinking immediately to show you the system is setting itself.

SECURITY SYSTEM INDICATOR



Once the security system is set, opening any door or the hood without using the key or the remote transmitter will cause the system to alarm. It also alarms if the radio is removed from the dashboard or the wiring is cut.

With the system set, you can still open the trunk with the remote transmitter without triggering the alarm. The alarm will sound if the trunk is opened with the trunk release button on the driver's door, the trunk release handle behind the trunk pass-through cover, or the emergency trunk opener.

The security system will not set if the hood, trunk, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, check the door and trunk open monitor on the multi-information display (see page 68) to see if the doors and trunk are fully closed. Since it is not part of the monitor display, manually check the hood.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

Cruise Control

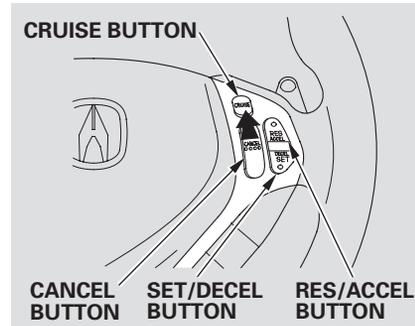
Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed above 25 mph (40 km/h) without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. It should be used for cruising on straight, open highways. It is not recommended for city driving, winding roads, slippery roads, heavy rain, or bad weather.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

Using the Cruise Control



1. Push in the CRUISE button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE MAIN indicator on the instrument panel will come on.
2. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed above 25 mph (40 km/h).

3. Press and release the SET/DECEL button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel comes on to show the system is now activated.

Cruise control may not hold the set speed when you are going up and down hills. If your vehicle speed increases going down a hill, use the brakes to slow down. This will cancel the cruise control. To resume the set speed, press the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel will come back on.

When climbing a steep hill, the automatic transmission may downshift to hold the set speed.

Cruise Control

Changing the Set Speed

You can increase the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

- Press and hold the RES/ACCEL button. When you reach the desired cruising speed, release the button.
- Push on the accelerator pedal. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed, then press the SET/DECEL button.
- To increase the speed in very small amounts, tap the RES/ACCEL button. Each time you do this, your vehicle speeds up about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).

You can decrease the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

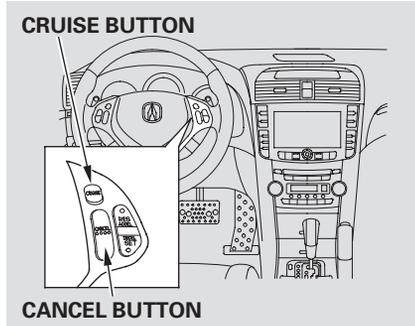
- Press and hold the SET/DECEL button. Release the button when you reach the desired speed.
- To slow down in very small amounts, tap the SET/DECEL button. Each time you do this, your vehicle will slow down about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Tap the brake or clutch pedal lightly with your foot. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel goes out. When the vehicle slows to the desired speed, press the SET/DECEL button.

Even with cruise control on, you can still use the accelerator pedal to speed up for passing. After completing the pass, take your foot off the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will return to the set cruising speed.

Resting your foot on the brake or clutch pedal causes cruise control to cancel.

Cruise Control

Canceling Cruise Control



You can cancel cruise control in any of these ways:

- Tap the brake or clutch pedal.
- Push the CANCEL button on the steering wheel.
- Push the CRUISE button on the steering wheel.

Resuming the Set Speed

When you push the CANCEL button, or tap the brake or clutch pedal, the system remembers the previously set cruising speed. To return to that speed, accelerate to above 25 mph (40 km/h) and then press and release the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator comes on, and the vehicle accelerates to the same cruising speed as before.

Pressing the CRUISE button turns the system completely off and erases the previous cruising speed.

HomeLink Universal Transceiver

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver built into your vehicle can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

General Information

If you are training HomeLink to operate a garage door or gate, you should unplug the motor for that device during training. Repeatedly pressing the remote control button could burn out the motor. HomeLink stores the code in a permanent memory. There should be no need to retrain HomeLink if your vehicle's battery goes dead or is disconnected.

If your garage door opener was manufactured before April 1982, you may not be able to program HomeLink to operate it. They do not have the safety feature that causes

the motor to stop and reverse if an obstacle is detected during closing, increasing the risk of injury.

Important Safety Precautions

Always refer to the opening instructions and safety information that came with your garage door opener or other equipment you intend to operate with HomeLink. If you do not have this information, contact the manufacturer of the equipment.

For quick and accurate training, make sure the remote transmitter for the device (garage door, automatic gate, security system, etc.) has a fresh battery.

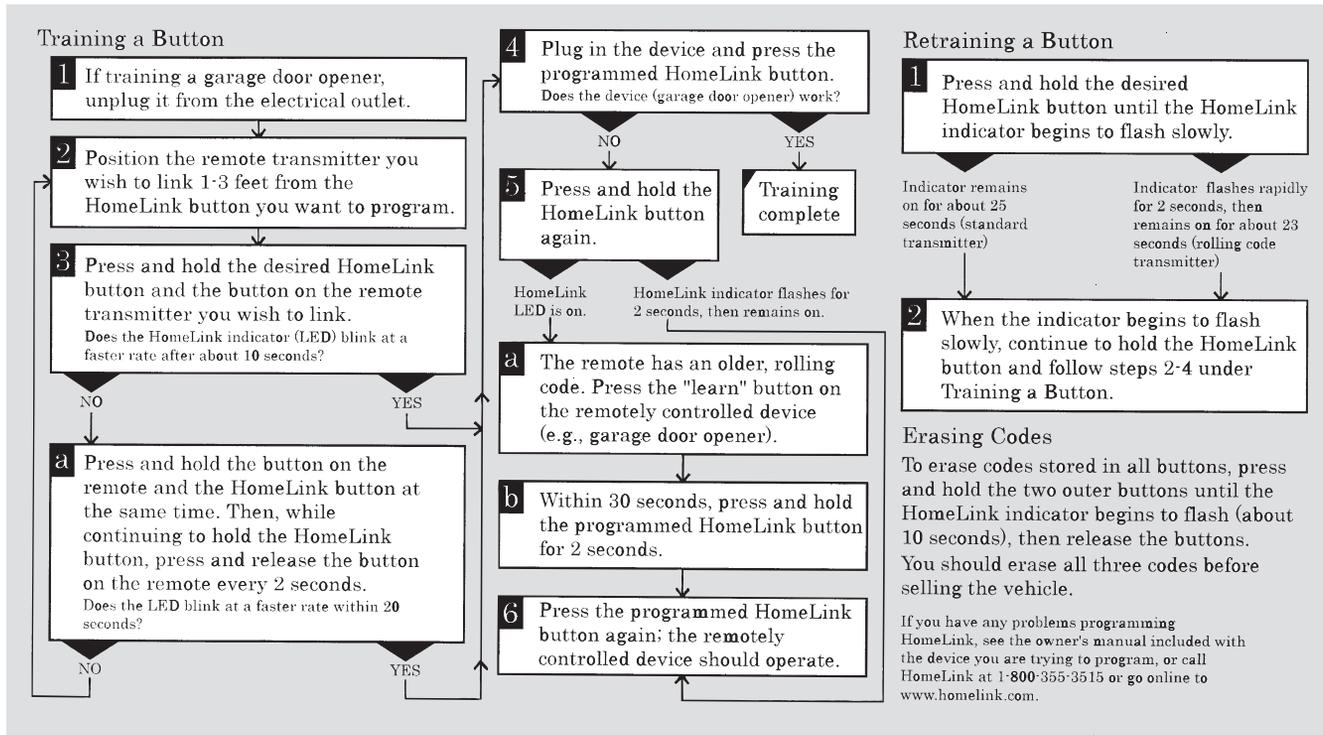
Training HomeLink

Before you begin — If you just received your vehicle and have not trained any of the buttons in HomeLink before, you should erase any previously learned codes before training the first button. To do this, press and hold the two outside buttons on the HomeLink transceiver for about 10 seconds, until the red indicator flashes. Release the buttons, then proceed to step 1 in the chart on the next page.

If you are training the second or third buttons, go directly to step 1.

CONTINUED

HomeLink Universal Transceiver



HomeLink Universal Transceiver

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

*As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.*

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

*This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.*

Features

HandsFreeLink™

Your vehicle is equipped with the HandsFreeLink (HFL). HFL uses Bluetooth technology as a wireless link between it and your Bluetooth compatible cell phone. When you are in your vehicle and your phone is linked to the HFL, you'll enjoy safe, hands-free phone use. The HFL is available in English on U.S. models, and in both English and French on Canadian models. To change the language, see page 214 .

Here are the main features of the HFL. Instructions for using the HFL begin on page 193 .

Voice Control

HFL recognizes simple voice commands, such as phone numbers and names. It uses these commands to automatically dial, receive, and store numbers. For more information on voice control, see Using Voice Control on page 193 .

Bluetooth Wireless® Technology

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. Bluetooth is the wireless technology that links your phone to the HFL. The HFL uses a Class 2 Bluetooth, which means the maximum range between your phone and vehicle is 30 feet (10 meters).

To use the HFL, your phone must have approved Bluetooth capability along with the Hands Free Profile. This type of phone is available through many phone makers and cellular carriers. You can also find an approved phone by visiting handsfreelink.com. (In Canada, visit www.acura.ca.) or by calling the Hands Free Link customer support at (888) 528-7876.

Incoming/Outgoing Calls

With a linked phone, the HFL allows you to send and receive calls in your vehicle without holding the phone.

Phonebook

The HFL can store up to 50 names and phone numbers in its phonebook. With a linked phone, you can then automatically dial any name or number in the phonebook.

On vehicles with navigation system

Your vehicle's HFL system has the cellular phonebook import function. This allows you to import your cellular phonebook to the HFL. Using the navigation system, you can make a call directly and store a desired number in the HFL from the list shown on the navigation display. For more information on how to import the phonebook or to make a call, see page 200 .

On all models

You can also store the desired number to the HFL directly from your cellular phone using the receive contact function in the HFL.

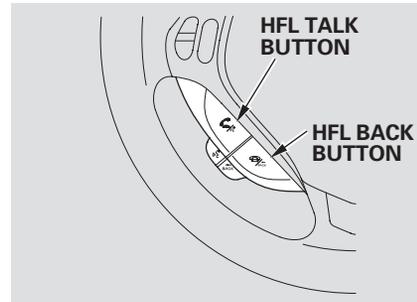
Microphone

The HFL microphone is on the ceiling, between the front map lights and the HomeLink buttons. On models with navigation system, the microphone is shared with the navigation system.

Audio System

When the HFL is in use, the sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers. If the audio system is in use while operating either of the HFL buttons or making a call, the HFL over-rides the audio system. To change the volume level, use the audio system volume knob.

HFL Buttons



To operate the HFL, use the HFL Talk and Back buttons on the left side of the steering wheel.

The HFL buttons are used as follows:

HFL Talk: This button is used before you give a command, to answer incoming calls, and to confirm system information.

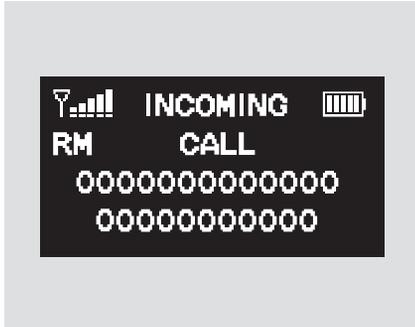
Press and release the button, then wait for a beep before giving a command.

HFL Back: This button is used to end a call, go back to the previous voice control command, and to cancel an operation.

Features

HandsFreeLink™

Multi-Information Display



When you are operating the HFL, or when you manually select HFL on the multi-information display, you will see this information on the screen:

- Signal Strength* — Indicates the network signal strength of the current phone. Five bars equals full strength.
- ROAM Status* — Indicates your phone is roaming.
- Battery Level Status* — Indicates the power currently remaining in your phone's battery. Five bars equals full battery strength.
- HFL Mode — Indicates when you are dialing and receiving calls.
- Phone Dialing — Indicates the number you entered or the number of the incoming call.

*: Some phones do not send this information to the HFL.

How to Use the HFL

The HFL is operated by the HFL Talk and Back buttons on the left side of the steering wheel. The next few pages provide instructions for all basic features of the HFL.

NOTE: All phones may not operate identically, and some may cause inconsistent operation of the HFL.

Using Voice Control

Here are some guidelines for using voice control:

- To enter a command, press and release the Talk button. Then, after the beep, say your command in a clear, natural tone.
- Close the windows and the moonroof.
- For better voice recognition, lowering the fan speed may be necessary.
- Adjust the air flow from both the dashboard and side vents so they do not blow against the microphone on the ceiling.
- After pressing the Talk button, wait for the beep, then give a voice command.

- Give a voice command in a clear natural speaking voice without pausing between words or numbers. If the system cannot recognize your command because of the background noise, speak louder.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the system may not interpret your voice commands correctly.
- If the HFL does not recognize a command, its response is, "Pardon." If it doesn't recognize the command a second time, its response is, "Please repeat." If it doesn't recognize the command a third time, it plays the Help prompt.

Features

CONTINUED

HandsFreeLink™

- To hear a list of available options at any time, press the TALK button, wait for the beep, and say, “Hands free link help.”
- Many commands can be spoken together. For example, you can say, “Dial 123-456-7891.”
- To enter a string of numbers in a Call or Dial command, you can say them all at once, or you can separate them in blocks of 3, 4, 7, 10, and 11.
- To skip a voice prompt, press the Talk button while the HFL is speaking. The HFL will then begin listening for your next command.
- To go back one step in a command process, say, “Go back,” or press the Back button. If nothing is said while the HFL is listening for a command, the HFL will time out and stop its voice recognition. The next time you press the Talk button, the HFL begins listening from the point at which it timed out.
- To end a command sequence at any time, press and hold the Back button, or press and release the Talk button, wait for the beep, and say, “Cancel.” The next time you press the Talk button, the HFL begins from its main menu.
- When you finish a command sequence, the HFL goes back to its main menu. For example, when you store the name, “Eric,” the HFL response is, “Eric has been stored.” The next time you press the Talk button, you will be at the main menu.

Setting Up the System

The voice of the HFL can be set to male or female (U.S. models only). Also, the incoming notification can be set to a ring tone, a prompt, or no notification.

To set up the system, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "System." The HFL response is, "System options are setup and clear."
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Setup." The HFL response is "Would you like male or female prompts?"

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Male" or "Female," depending on the system voice you want. The HFL response is, "Male (Female) prompts have been selected. Would you like an audible notification of an incoming call?"
4. Press and release the Talk button. If you say "Yes" after the beep, the HFL response is, "Would you like the notification to be a ring tone or a prompt?" If you say "No" after the beep, the HFL returns to its main menu. Saying "No" will result in no ring tone or prompt playback during an incoming call. The audio system will still mute, and a message will be displayed.

5. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Ring tone" or "Prompt." The HFL response is "A ring tone will be used" or "An incoming call prompt will be used." If you choose "Ring tone," you will hear a ring tone through the audio speakers to announce an incoming call. If you choose "Prompt," you will hear this message to announce an incoming call: "You have an incoming call."
6. The HFL response continues "A security option is available to lock the HFL. Each time the vehicle is turned on, a passcode would be required to use this system. Would you like this security option turned on?" If you say "Yes," you can set your passcode. Refer to the setting procedure on the next page.

HandsFreeLink™

Setting Your Passcode

The HFL will accept a numeric, four-digit passcode that you can use for security purposes.

To set your passcode, do this:

1. Follow the system setup procedure as described previously.
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes.”
3. The HFL response is “What is the four-digit number you would like to set as your passcode?”
4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the four-digit passcode you want to use. For example, say “1, 2, 3, 4.” The HFL response is “1, 2, 3, 4. Is this correct?”

5. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes.” The HFL response is “Security is on. Each time the vehicle is turned on, the passcode will be required to use the system. The system setup is complete. Returning to the main menu.”

6. Press and release the Talk button. If you say “No.” after the beep, the HFL response is “Security will not be used. The system setup is complete.”

To enter your passcode, do this:

Once a passcode is set, you can lock the HFL so it only operates after the passcode is entered.

1. The HFL will prompt you for your passcode each time the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position and you press the Talk button. You will only be asked for the passcode once per ignition

cycle. If the passcode is set, its response is “The system is locked. What is the four-digit passcode?”

2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say your four-digit passcode. For example, say “1, 2, 3, 4.”
3. If the passcode is correct, the HFL response is “Main menu.” If the passcode is not correct, the HFL response is “1,2,3,4 is incorrect. Please try again.” Go back to the step 2.

If you forget your passcode and you cannot activate the HFL, consult your dealer to cancel the passcode.

Pairing Your Phone

Your Bluetooth® compatible phone with HandsFree Profile must be paired to the HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

NOTE:

- HFL does not allow you to pair your phone if the vehicle is moving.
- For pairing, your phone must be in its Discovery mode.
- Up to six phones can be paired to the HFL.
- The following procedure works for most phones. If you cannot pair your phone to the HFL with this procedure, refer to your phone's operating manual, visit handsfreelink.com, call the HandsFreeLink customer support at (888) 528-7876, or call your phone retailer.

- During the pairing process, turn off any previously paired phones before pairing a new phone.
1. With your phone on and the ignition in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Phone setup." The HFL response is "Phone setup options are status, pair, edit, delete, and list."
 2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Pair." The HFL response is "The pairing process requires operation of your mobile phone. For safety, only perform this function while the vehicle is stopped. State a four-digit code for pairing. Note this code. It will be requested by the phone."

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the four-digit code you want to use. For example, say "1, 2, 3, 4." The HFL response is, "1, 2, 3, 4. Is this correct?"
 4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Yes." The HFL response is "Searching for a Bluetooth phone."
- NOTE:** Steps 5 and 6 show a common way to get your phone into its Discovery mode. If these steps do not work on your phone, refer to the phone's operating manual.
5. Follow the prompts on your phone to get it into its Discovery mode. The phone will search for the HFL. When it comes up, select HandsFreeLink from the list of options displayed on your phone.

CONTINUED

HandsFreeLink™

6. When asked by the phone, enter the four-digit code from step 3 into your phone. The HFL response is “A new phone has been found. What would you like to name this phone?”
7. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you want to use. For example, say “Eric’s phone.” The HFL response is “Eric’s phone has been successfully paired. Returning to the main menu.”
8. If you want to pair another phone, repeat steps 1 through 7.

Once the pairing process is completed, AcuraLink may display a connection confirmation screen. This screen is used to create a data connection between your cell phone and the AcuraLink system. You can choose to set up the data connection now, or do it later. If you want to do

it now, exit the HFL menu by pressing the HFL Back button one or more times.

To rename a paired phone, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phone setup.” The HFL response is “Phone setup options are status, pair, edit, delete, and list.”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Edit.” The HFL response is “Which phone would you like to edit?”
3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name of the phone you want to rename. For example, say “Eric’s phone.” The HFL response is “What is the new name for Eric’s phone?”

4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the new name of the phone. For example, say “Lisa’s phone.” The HFL response is, “The name has been changed. Returning to the main menu.”

To delete a paired phone, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phone setup.” The HFL response is, “Phone setup options are status, pair, edit, delete, and list.”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Delete.” The HFL response is, “Which phone would you like to delete?”
3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name of the phone you want to delete. For example say “Eric’s phone.” The HFL response is “Would you like to delete Eric’s phone?”

4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes.” The HFL response is “Preparing to delete Eric’s phone.” Say “OK” to continue. Otherwise, say “Go back,” or “Cancel.”

5. Press and release the Talk button. If you say “OK” after the beep, the HFL response is “The phone has been deleted. Returning to the main menu.” If you say “Go back,” or “Cancel,” the phone will not be deleted.

To list all paired phones, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phone setup.” The HFL response is, “Phone setup options are status, pair, edit, delete, and list.”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “List.” The HFL responds by listing the name of each paired phone. When all

phones paired to the system have been read, the HFL response is “The entire list has been read. Returning to the main menu.”

To find out the status of the phone being used, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phone setup.” The HFL response is “Phone setup options are status, pair, edit, delete, and list.”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Status.” An example of the HFL response is, “Eric’s phone is linked. Battery strength is three bars. Signal strength is five bars, and the phone is roaming. Returning to the main menu.”

To change from the currently linked phone to another paired phone, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Next phone.” The HFL response is “Searching for the next phone.” The HFL then disconnects the linked phone and searches for another paired phone. If no other phones are found, the first phone remains linked.

HandsFreeLink™

Making a Call

You can make calls using any phone number, or by using a name in the HFL phonebook. You can also redial the last number called. During a call, the HFL allows you to talk up to 30 minutes after you remove the key from the ignition switch.

To make a call using a phone number, do this:

1. With your phone on and the ignition in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Call” or “Dial.” The HFL response is, “What name or number would you like to call/dial?”

2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the number you want to call. For example, say “123 456 7891.” The HFL response is “123 456 7891. Say call, dial, or continue to add numbers.”

On vehicles with navigation system

You can also make a call directly from the list shown on the navigation display.

For more information on how to make a call, see page 205 .

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Call” or “Dial.” The HFL response is “Calling” or “Dialing.” Once connected, you will hear the person you called through the audio speakers. To change the volume, use the audio system volume knob.
4. To end the call, press the Back button.

To make a call using a name in the HFL phonebook, do this:

1. With your phone on and the ignition in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Call" or "Dial." The HFL response is, "What name or number would you like to call/dial?"
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you want to call. For example, say "Eric." The HFL response is "Would you like to call Eric?"
3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Yes." The HFL response is "Calling" or "Dialing." Once connected, you will hear the person you called through the audio speakers. To change the volume, use the audio system volume knob.

4. To end the call, press the Back button.

To redial the last number called by the phone, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Redial." The HFL response is, "Redialing." Once connected, you will hear the person you called through the audio speakers. To change the volume, use the audio system volume knob.

Sending Numbers or Names During a Call

The HFL allows you to send numbers or names during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system. You can also program account numbers into the HFL phonebook for easy retrieval during menu-driven calls.

To send a number during a call, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Send." The HFL response is, "What name or number would you like to send?"
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the number you want to send. For example, say "1, 2, 3." The HFL response is "1, 2, 3. Say send, or continue to add numbers."

CONTINUED

HandsFreeLink™

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Send.” The dial tones will be sent, and the call will continue.

To send a name during a call, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Send.” The HFL response is, “What name or number would you like to send?”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you want to send. For example, say “Account number.” The HFL response is “Would you like to send account number?”
3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Send.” The dial tones will be sent, and the call will continue.

Receiving a Call

If you receive a call when you are not on the phone, the HFL interrupts the audio system (if it is on), and plays the incoming call notification, if activated. To answer the call, press the Talk button and begin speaking. If you don’t want to answer the call, press the Back button.

If your phone has Call Waiting, and you receive a call when you are on the phone, press and release the Talk button to answer it. When you do this, the original call is placed on hold. To return to the original call, press the Talk button again. If you don’t want to answer the new call, disregard it, and continue with your original call. If you want to hang up the original call and answer the new call, press the Back button.

Transferring a Call

During a call, you can transfer it from the HFL to your phone, or from your phone to the HFL.

To transfer a call from the HFL to your phone, do this:

Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Transfer.” The audio switches from the HFL to the phone.

To transfer a call from your phone to the HFL, do this:

Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Transfer.” The audio switches from your phone to the HFL.

Muting a Call

During a call, you can mute or unmute your voice to the person you are talking to.

To mute your voice, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Mute." The HFL response is, "Mute is active."

To unmute your voice, do this:

2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Mute." The HFL response is, "Mute is canceled."

Setting up the Phonebook

The HFL phonebook can store up to 50 names with their associated numbers. These can be any types of numbers. For example, you can store a phone number and use it to make a call, or you can store an account number and use it during a call to a menu-driven phone system.

To add a name, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Phonebook." The HFL response is "Phonebook options are store, edit, delete, receive contact, and list."
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Store." The HFL response is, "What name would you like to store?"

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you would like to store. For example, say "Eric" or say "account number." The HFL response is "What is the number for Eric," or "What is the number for account number?"
4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the number. For example, say "123 456 7891." The HFL response is "123 456 7891."
5. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Enter." The HFL response is "Eric (or account number) has been stored. Returning to the main menu."

Features

CONTINUED

HandsFreeLink™

To edit the number of a name, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button.
After the beep, say "Phonebook."
The HFL response is "Phonebook options are store, edit, delete, receive contact, and list."
2. Press and release the Talk button.
After the beep, say "Edit." The HFL response is, "What name would you like to edit?"
3. Press and release the Talk button.
After the beep, say the name you would like to edit. For example, say "Eric." The HFL response is "What is the new number for Eric?"
4. Press and release the Talk button.
After the beep, say the new number for Eric. For example, say "987 654 3219." The HFL response is, "987 654 3219."

5. Press and release the Talk button.
After the beep, say "Enter." The HFL response is "The number has been changed. Returning to the main menu."

To delete a name, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button.
After the beep, say "Phonebook."
The HFL response is, "The Phonebook options are store, edit, delete, receive contact, and list."
2. Press and release the Talk button.
After the beep, say "Delete." The HFL response is, "What name would you like to delete?"
3. Press and release the Talk button.
After the beep, say the name you would like to delete. For example, say "Eric." The HFL response is "Do you want to delete Eric?"

4. Press and release the Talk button.
After the beep, say "Yes." The HFL response is, "The name has been deleted. Returning to the main menu."

To list all names in the phonebook, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button.
After the beep, say "Phonebook."
The HFL response is, "The Phonebook options are store, edit, delete, receive contact, and list."
2. Press and release the Talk button.
After the beep, say "List." The HFL responds by listing the names in the phonebook. When the end of the list is reached, the HFL response is, "The entire list has been read. Returning to the main menu."

To call a name from the phonebook list, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phonebook.” The HFL response is “Phonebook options are store, edit, delete, receive contact, and list.”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “List.” The HFL responds by listing the names in the phonebook. When it says the name you want to call, for example, Eric, press the Talk button, and then say “Call.” The HFL response is, “Would you like to call Eric?”
3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes.” The HFL response is “Calling.” Once connected, you will hear the person you called through the audio speakers. To change the volume, use the audio system volume knob.

Storing a Phone Number Directly from Your Phone

You can store the desired number to the HFL phonebook directly from your cellular phone. Not all phones have this capability. For more information, visit www.acura.com/handsfreelink, or call 888-528-7876.

To store a phone number from your phone:

1. With your phone on and the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phonebook.” The HFL response is, “Phonebook options are store, edit, delete, receive contact and list.”

2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Receive contact.” The HFL response is, “The receive process requires operation of your Bluetooth device. For safety, only perform this function while the vehicle is stopped. HFL is now waiting to receive contact from a Bluetooth device.”
3. Select a desired number from the list on your phone, and transmit/send (individual steps will vary for each type of phone, refer to your phone’s owner’s manual) via Bluetooth. The HFL response is “One phone number has been received for this contact. What name would you like to store for the mobile number? To discard this, say ‘Discard.’”

CONTINUED

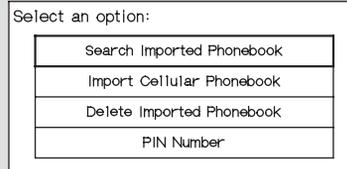
HandsFreeLink™

4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you would like to store. For example, say “Neil at work.” The HFL response is, “Neil at work will be stored. Is this correct ? ”
5. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say either “Yes” or “No.” The HFL response is, “Neil at work has been stored. If more than one number was received for the contact entry, the HFL asks for the name of the next number. If only one number is received, or all numbers have been stored, the HFL response is, “Would you like HFL to receive another contact?”
6. If you want to continue to store any other numbers, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes.” The HFL response is, “HFL is now waiting to receive a contact from a Bluetooth device.”
7. Select a desired number from the list on your phone, and transmit/send (individual steps will vary for each type of phone, refer to your phone’s owner’s manual) via Bluetooth. The HFL response is “One phone number has been received for this contact. What name would you like to store for the mobile number ? To discard this, say ‘Discard.’ ”
8. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you would like to store. For example, say “Susan at work.” The HFL response is, “Susan at work will be stored. Is this correct?”
9. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say either “Yes” or “No.” The HFL response is “Susan at work has been stored. Would you like HFL to receive another contact?”
10. If you do not want to continue to store any other numbers, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “No.”

Cellular Phonebook Options

On vehicles with navigation system

The cellular phonebook option allows you to store up to 1,000 names and 10,000 phone numbers in the HandsFreeLink phonebook from your cellular phonebook. With the HFL, you can then automatically dial any name or number in the phonebook. Not all phones have this capability. For more information, visit www.acura.com/handsfreelink, or call 800-528-7876.



To use the cellular phonebook with the HFL, say or select "Cellular Phonebook" from the Information screen. The navigation display will change as shown above.

If any phonebook is not stored and your phone is not linked to the HFL, Cellular Phonebook is grayed out.

PIN Number. This option allows you to add, change, or remove a PIN number for any phonebook that has been imported.

Import Cellular Phonebook: This option allows you to store the phonebook of your cellular phone in the HFL. When you link your phone to the HFL and select this option, the system will start importing and loading the phonebook.

Features

CONTINUED

HandsFreeLink™

Search Imported Phonebook: This option allows you to search the phone numbers stored in the HFL. When you enter a keyword for a person's name, such as the first name or last name, the system will find the number you want and let you make calls.

Delete Imported Phonebook: This option allows you to delete the stored phonebook from the HFL. When you link your phone to the HFL and select this option, the system will automatically delete the phonebook of the linked phone from the HFL (see page 211).

To import the cellular phonebook
You can import the phonebook of your cellular phone into the HFL. Link your phone to the HFL, and select "Import Cellular Phonebook" from the "Select an option" screen. When the message "The import was successful." is displayed, push in on the joystick to select "OK."

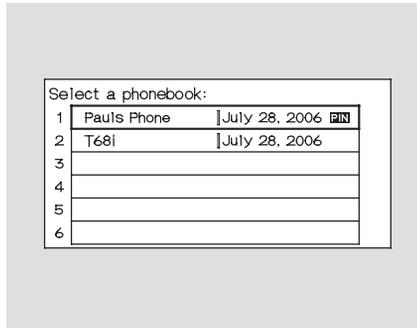


NOTE:

- HFL does not allow you to pair your phone if the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired to the HFL.

For information on linking to the HFL, see page 197 .

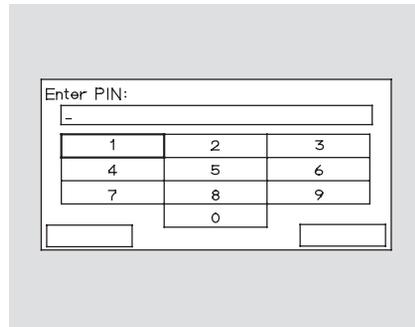
To search the imported phonebook



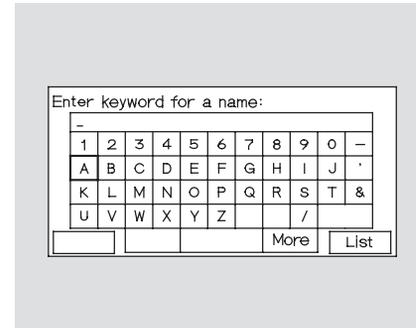
You can search the stored number by entering keywords.

Select “Search Imported Phonebook” from the “Select an option” screen. The display will change as shown above.

Select a phonebook from the displayed list. If the phonebook you select has a PIN icon, you will need the 4-digit PIN number to access the phonebook. The following screen will appear.



Enter the PIN number. You cannot access a PIN protected phonebook if you do not use the correct PIN number.



Enter the keyword for a person’s name, such as the first name or last name, using the joystick. If the system does not find an exact match, say or select “LIST” when you finish entering the keyword.

The system will display a list of person’s names, with the closest match to the name you entered at the top of the list.

CONTINUED

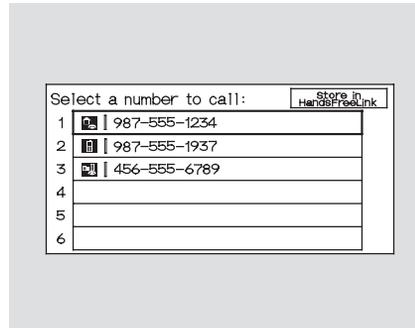
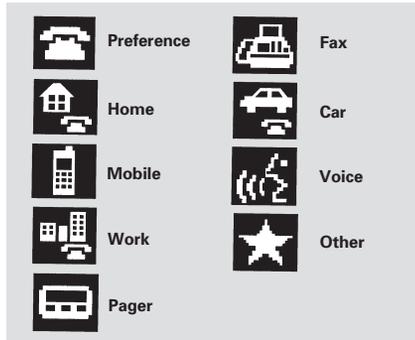
Features

HandsFreeLink™

Select the number (1–6) of the desired person from the list.

Up to three category icons are displayed in the right side of the list. These category icons indicate how many numbers are stored for the person. If a name has more than three category icons, “...” is displayed.

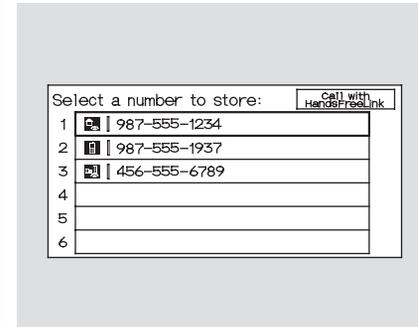
The following category icons will appear:



After selecting a person, the system will display a list of the person’s phone numbers.

Select the desired number from the list to make a call.

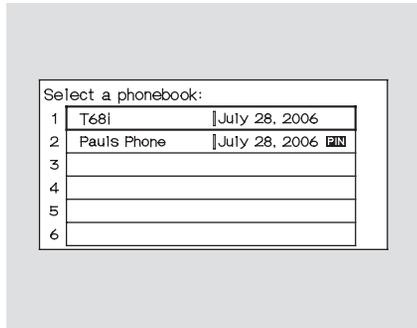
To store an imported phonebook number



Say or select “STORE IN HandsFreeLink” from the “Select a number to call” screen. The screen shown above will appear.

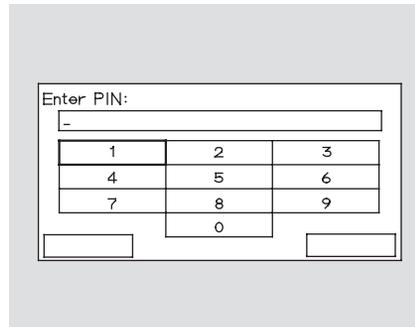
Select the desired number from the list to store it in the HFL.

To delete the imported phonebook



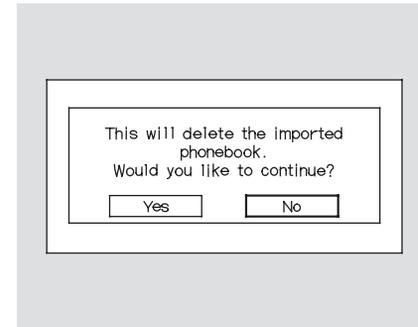
You can delete the stored phonebook from the HFL. Link your phone to the HFL and select "Delete Imported Phonebook" from the "Select an option" screen. The display will change as shown above.

Select a phonebook from the displayed list. If the phonebook you select has a PIN icon, you will need the 4-digit PIN number to access the phonebook. The following screen will appear.



Enter the PIN number to access the phonebook. You cannot access a PIN protected phonebook if you do not use the correct PIN number.

After you enter the correct PIN number, or if the phonebook you select is not PIN protected, the following screen appears.



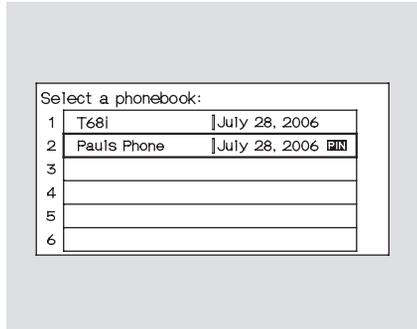
Say or select "Yes", and the message "The imported phonebook has been deleted." will appear. Select "OK" to complete the deletion.

Features

CONTINUED

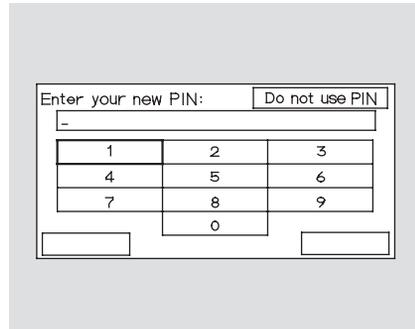
HandsFreeLink™

To add, change, or remove a PIN number from any phonebook

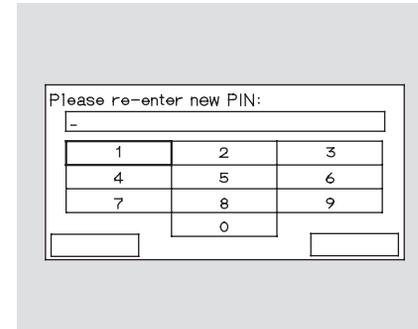


You can add, change or remove a PIN number from any phonebook. Select “PIN Number” from the “Select an Option” screen. The display will change as shown above.

To add a PIN number

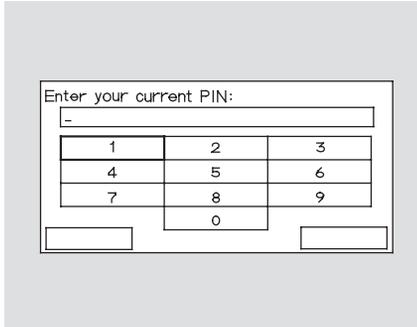


1. Select the phonebook you wish to add the PIN number to. The phonebook you select cannot already have a PIN icon. The display will change as shown above.

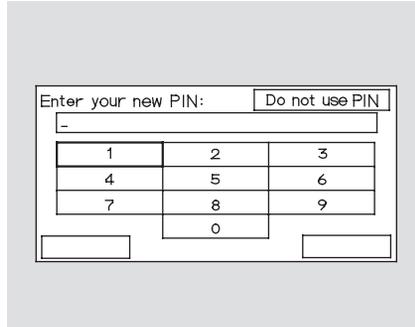


2. Enter the 4-digit PIN number. You will be asked to re-enter the PIN to verify.

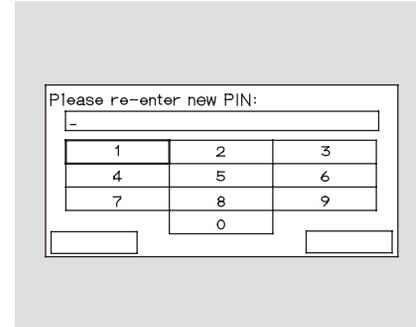
To change a PIN number



1. Select the phonebook you wish to change the PIN number for. The display will change as shown above.



2. Enter your current PIN number.



3. Enter your new 4-digit PIN number. You will be asked to re-enter the PIN to verify.

Features

HandsFreeLink™

Clearing the System

This operation clears the HFL of your passcode, your paired phones, all names in the HFL phonebook, and all imported phonebooks. Clearing is recommended before you sell your vehicle.

To clear the system, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "System." The HFL response is, "System options are setup and clear."
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Clear." The HFL response is, "This process will clear all paired phones, clear all entries in the phonebook, and clear the passcode. Is this what you would like to do?"

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Yes." The HFL response is "Preparing to clear all paired phones, all phonebook entries, and the passcode. This may take up to 2 minutes to complete." Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "OK" to proceed, or say "Go back" or "Cancel."
4. If you said "OK," after a short period of time, the HFL response is, "System has been cleared. Returning to the main menu."

Changing Language

Canadian models only

To change from English to French, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Change language." The HFL response is "English or French?"
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "French." The HFL response is "Vous avez selectionne Francais. Les noms enregistres en mode Anglais ne seront pas accessible en mode Francais. Voulez-vous continuer? You have selected French. Name tags that were stored while in English mode will not be accessible in French mode. Would you like to continue?"

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Oui or Yes,” If there are no paired phones without French name tags, the HFL response is “Veuillez attendre que le systeme change de langue. Please wait while the language is changed.” “La langue a ete changee. Retour au menu principal.”

NOTE: If there are paired phones without French name tags, the following prompts will continue.

If there are paired phones without French name tags, the HFL response is “Pour que le système identifie les téléphones qui ont été jumelés dans une autre langue, les noms des téléphones doivent être ré-enregistrés.”

4. The HFL response is, for example, “Quel est le nom Français pour <Paul’s phone>?” Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Téléphone de Paul.” The HFL response is, “Quel est le nom Français pour <Pat’s phone>?” Press and release the Talk button. Say “Téléphone de Pat.” After all paired phones missing a French name tag are re-recorded, the HFL will prompt, “Retour au menu principal.”

To change from French to English, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Changer Langue.” The HFL response is, “Anglais ou Francais?”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Anglais.” The HFL response is, “You have selected English. Name tags that were stored while in French mode will not be accessible in English mode. Would you like to continue? Vous avez selectionne Anglais. Les noms enregistres en mode Francais ne seront pas accessible en mode Anglais. Voulez-vous contnuez?”

CONTINUED

HandsFreeLink™

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes or Oui.” If there are no paired phones without English name tags, the HFL response is “Please wait while the language is changed. Veuillez attendre que le système change de langue.” “The language has been changed. Returning to the main menu.”

NOTE: If there are paired phones without English name tags, the following prompts will continue.

If there are paired phones without English name tags, the HFL response is “The language has been changed. For the system to identify phones that were paired while in another language, the phone names need to be re-recorded.”

4. The HFL says, for example, “What is the English name for <Téléphone de Paul>?” Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Paul’s phone.” The HFL response is “What is the English name for <Téléphone de Pat>?” Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Pat’s phone.” After all paired phones missing an English name tag are re-recorded, the HFL will say “Returning to the main menu.”

HFL Limitation

You cannot use the HFL while using AcuraLink.

AcuraLink

On vehicles with navigation system
AcuraLink enhances your ownership experience by providing a direct communication link between your vehicle and the Acura Server. Working through the XM radio satellite, AcuraLink works in conjunction with the navigation system, HandsFreeLink (HFL), and audio system in your vehicle. It displays and receives several kinds of messages, including:

- Operating tips and information on your vehicle's features.
- Important recall and safety information.
- Maintenance information to keep your vehicle in top condition.
- Diagnostic information to provide information about any problems with your vehicle.

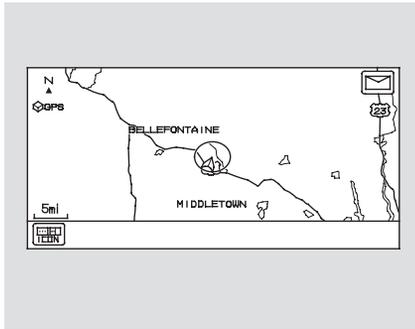
The touch panel controls most of the AcuraLink functions.

Features

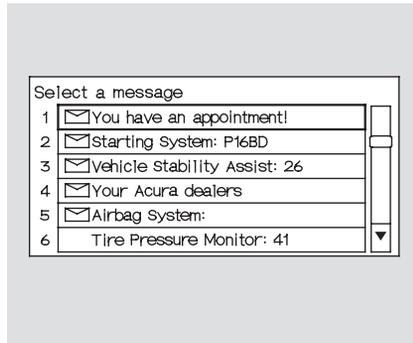
AcuraLink

Reading Messages

If you have new messages, an envelope icon appears in the top right corner of the navigation screen.

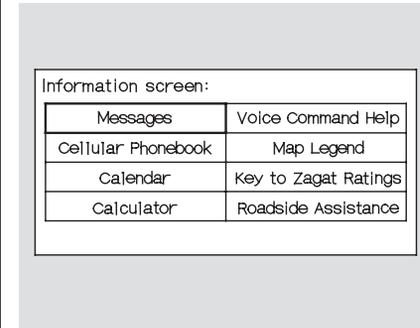


To open a message:
Press the INFO button, then select New Message from the navigation system map menu.

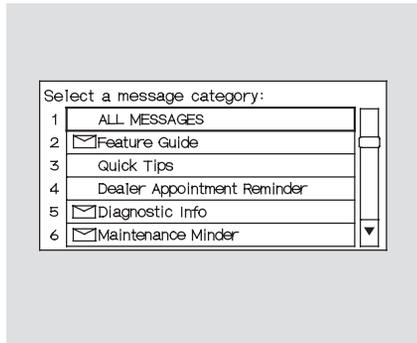


A list of all messages will be shown. New Messages will be at the top. Select the message you want to read by touching it on the screen.

To view previously read messages:



Press the INFO button. The information screen will be shown.



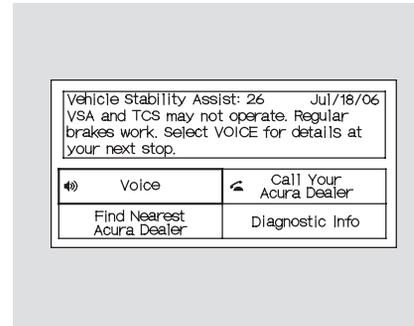
Select “Messages”, then select a message category by touching it on the screen. You will see the above display. Select the message you want to read by touching it on the screen.

Unread messages have a closed envelope icon next to them. The icon disappears when it has already been read.

NOTE: Only diagnostic info messages overlay the navigation screen while driving. They indicate if your vehicle has a problem that may need immediate attention (see page 224).

After purchasing your vehicle, messages may not appear immediately. Your dealer has to register the vehicle identification before you can receive messages. This can take several days to process.

Message Options



When you open a message, you can read a summary of it, and then choose one of several options. If an option is not available for a message, that button will not be highlighted.

Features

CONTINUED

AcuraLink

Delete — Select this button to delete the current message.

Voice — Select this button to hear a voice read the entire message. This gives you more information than the screen can display at one time. When you select the Voice button, it changes to a Stop Reading button. Select the button again to stop the voice.

Call — Select this button to call a phone number embedded in the message. When you select **Call**, the HandsFreeLink (HFL) dials the number for you.

To make a call, your Bluetooth® compatible phone must be paired to the vehicle's HandsFreeLink system, powered on, and located within the vehicle (see page 197).

Find Nearest Acura Dealer — Select this button to find the nearest Acura dealer using the navigation system.

Call Your Acura Dealer — Select this button to call the Acura dealer you purchased your vehicle from. AcuraLink also directs you to this dealer so you can schedule a maintenance appointment or receive information about a message. If your assigned servicing dealer changes, AcuraLink will reset to call that dealer.

Diagnostic Info — Select this button to get more information about the current diagnostic message. To use this option, your phone must be paired with the HFL. In addition, the paired phone must have a compatible data service and be set up with the AcuraLink system to make a data connection. Access the handsfreelink.com website to find out which data services are currently compatible with AcuraLink.

Message Preferences

To set your AcuraLink preferences (the types of messages you want to receive, if any), visit the Owner Link website at www.owners.acura.com, and choose what you would like to receive. If you do not have internet access, call Acura Client Services at (800) 382-2238; they can set your message preferences for you.

Deleting Messages

NOTE: Diagnostic info and recall/campaign messages can only be deleted by your dealer.

To delete a single message:

- Press the INFO button to bring up the Information screen.
- Scroll to the Messages option, then select it by touching on the panel.
- Select the message category that contains the message you want to delete.
- Select the message you want to delete.
- Scroll to Delete, and select it by touching on the panel.

To delete all messages:

NOTE: The Delete All Messages command does not apply to Diagnostic Info and Recall messages. They can only be deleted by your dealer.

- Press the SETUP button to view the setup screen.
- Select MORE by touching it on the panel.

- Scroll to the AcuraLink/Messages button, and select it by touching it on the panel.
- Scroll to the Delete Messages option, and select it by touching it on the panel.
- Scroll to the category with the messages you want to delete, and select the category by touching it on the panel.



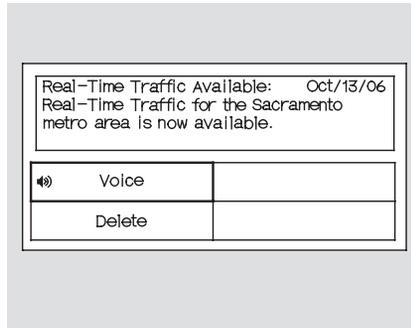
AcuraLink

Message Categories

There are six message categories in AcuraLink: Quick Tips, Feature Guides, Maintenance Minders, Recalls/Campaigns, Diagnostic Info, and Dealer Appointment Reminders. The system can store up to 256 messages.

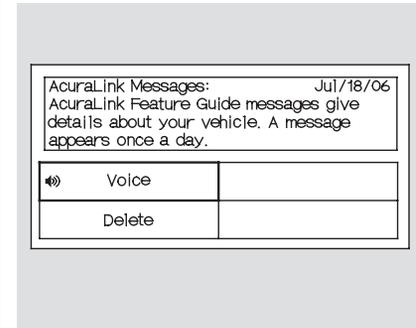
Message categories can be added, revised, or deleted through broadcast messages from Acura.

Quick Tips



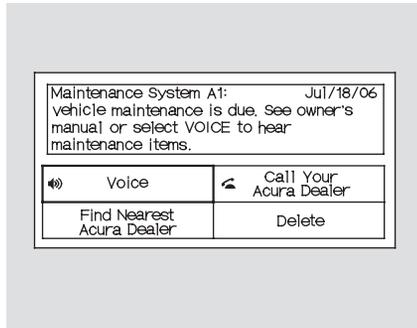
These messages, based on updated vehicle information and comments from other TL owners, supplement your Owner's Manual and Quick Start Guide. They provide you with relevant information for a safe and enjoyable ownership experience. For additional information, call Acura Client Services directly through the HFL.

Feature Guide



During the first 90 days of ownership, one of up to 32 different messages appears each day. These messages help you to use and understand the features of your vehicle.

Maintenance Minder



These messages provide detailed information about the service needed for your vehicle. When a maintenance message appears on the multi-information display, a list of needed maintenance items is provided through in an AcuraLink message. These messages tell you the exact maintenance needed, helping you to avoid unnecessary maintenance costs.

You can then use the message options to call your dealer for an appointment or to find the nearest dealer.

Recall/Campaigns



If your vehicle is affected by a recall or other important safety information, a letter will be mailed to you about the issue and how to fix it. If you don't get your vehicle fixed, you will also receive a reminder message through AcuraLink. You can then use the message options to call your dealer for an appointment or to find the nearest dealer.

Features

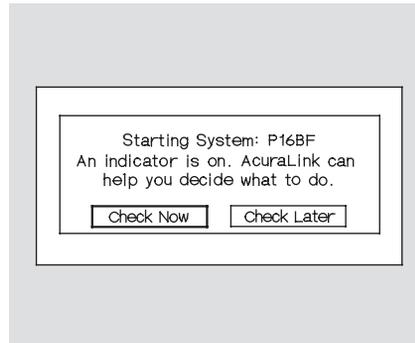
AcuraLink

Diagnostic Info

When an instrument panel indicator comes on or a message is displayed on the multi-information display (MID), AcuraLink can provide information about the cause of the indicator or message and the recommended action to address it. This helps you handle the problem as it occurs, preventing or limiting costly repairs.

The AcuraLink system cannot determine some mechanical problems (such as squeaks or rattles) that are not triggered by the diagnostic indicator monitors.

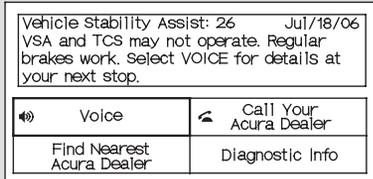
For more information on the instrument panel indicators, see page 57 .



When an instrument panel indicator comes on or a message is displayed on the MID, AcuraLink immediately notifies you with the message, “An indicator is on. AcuraLink can help you decide what to do.” If you do not want the information right away, select the Check Later option. If you want the information now, select the Check Now option. (If the navigation screen is not active, you must select OK from the navigation disclaimer screen before you can check the

information.)

Depending on the severity of the problem, the message will let you know if you should see your dealer immediately or if you can wait until a later date.

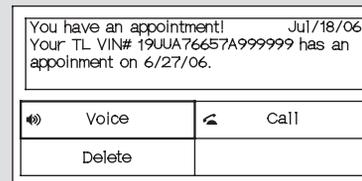


You can then use the message options to call your dealer for an appointment or to find the nearest dealer.

When viewing a diagnostic info message through the INFO menu, you can use the Diagnostic Info button to connect to the Acura server and retrieve the latest information regarding the problem.

NOTE: There may not be any additional information, depending on the time elapsed since the previous time you retrieved the information from the Acura server.

Dealer Appointment Reminder

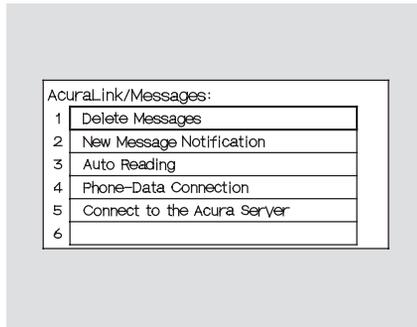
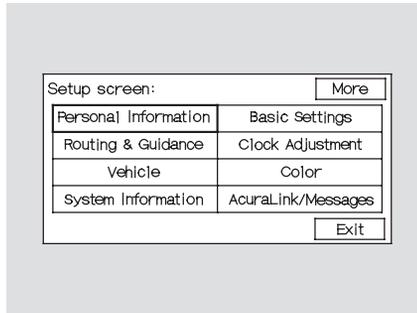


When you make an appointment through the Owner Link Online Scheduling Service, you can be reminded about that appointment through AcuraLink in advance. If you need to reschedule, you can call your dealer directly with the HFL.

The timing of your reminder is based on your reminder preference established on Owner Link.

AcuraLink

AcuraLink/Messages Screen



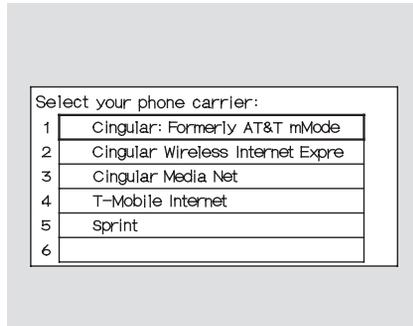
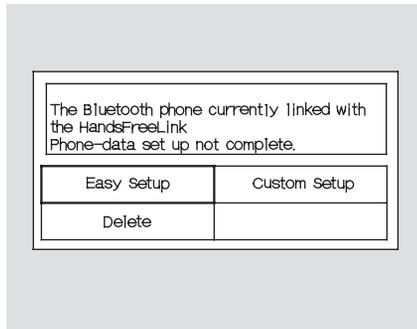
To access the following functions, press the SETUP button, touch the MORE button, then select AcuraLink/Messages by touching on the screen.

Delete Messages — Select this button to delete all stored messages within a category, except for diagnostic info and recall campaign messages. These messages can only be deleted by a certified technician after the recall is done or the problem is corrected, or through a broadcast message from Acura.

New Message Notification — Select ON if you want to be notified of new messages (envelope icon appears on the navigation screen). Select OFF if you do not want to be notified of new messages (envelope icon does not appear on the screen). Messages can still be accessed using the INFO menu. If you would like to stop receiving messages, visit the OwnerLink website at www.owners.acura.com to change your messaging preferences.

Auto Reading — Select ON to have the system automatically read each message to you. Select OFF to manually select the Voice button when you want a message read to you.

Phone-Data Connection – Select this button to begin the process required to connect to Acura. This is used to access the most recent diagnostic information when a problem occurs.



NOTE: For the Phone Data Connection button to be active, you need a Bluetooth® compatible and enabled cell phone paired to the HandsFreeLink (HFL). To complete the date connection setup, the paired phone must have a compatible data service.
To find more information on Bluetooth® compatible and enabled cell phones, visit handsfreelink.com. or call the Hands Free Link customer

support at (888) 528-7876.

Connect to the Acura Server – The default setting is prompt. When a diagnostic info message appears, and you select the Check Now button, the system will prompt you before connecting to the Acura server. If you do not wish to connect at that time, select No at the prompt, and you will see the information from the onboard database. The “Auto” setting will remove the prompt when you select the Check Now button and will automatically connect to the Acura server. This setting only applies when you have a Bluetooth® enabled phone that is paired with the HFL and you have completed the Phone-Data Connection setup.

Features

Compass

On models without navigation system

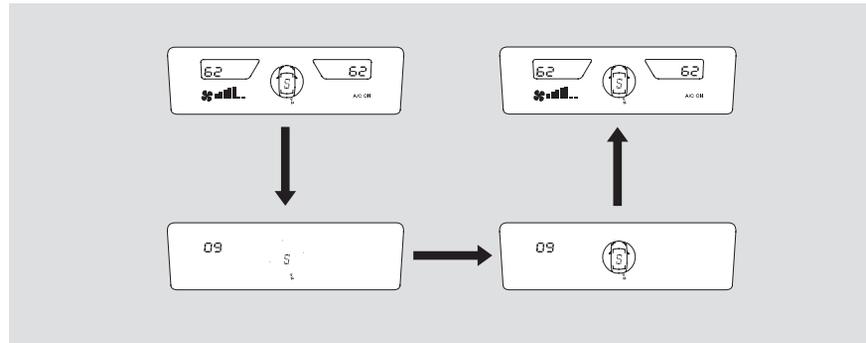
Compass Operation

Compass operation can be affected by driving near power lines or stations, across bridges, through tunnels, over railroad crossings, past large vehicles, or driving near large objects that can cause a magnetic disturbance. It can also be affected by accessories such as antennas and roof racks that are mounted by magnets.

Compass Zone Selection

In most areas, there is a variation between magnetic north and true north. Zone selection is required so the compass can compensate for this variation. To check and select the zone, do this:

1. Press and hold the  and  buttons simultaneously until the temperature display changes (about 5 seconds).



2. Verify the zone for your area on the map on page 230.
3. Press the  button to cycle the count down, or the  button to cycle the count up. Once the correct zone is displayed, continue to step 4.
4. Press the OFF button to save the zone selection.
5. To exit the zone setting mode, either press the  button and  button simultaneously for about 5 seconds, or press any climate control button on either side of the display other than the  or  button.

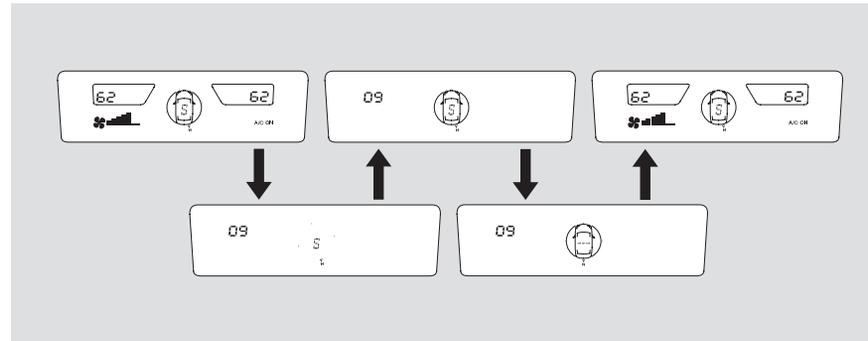
Compass

Compass Calibration

If you see “—” in the compass display, the compass is self-calibrating. The compass may need to be manually calibrated after exposure to a strong magnetic field. If the compass seems to be continuously showing the wrong direction and is not self-calibrating, do the following.

NOTE: Do this procedure in an open area, away from buildings, power lines, and other vehicles.

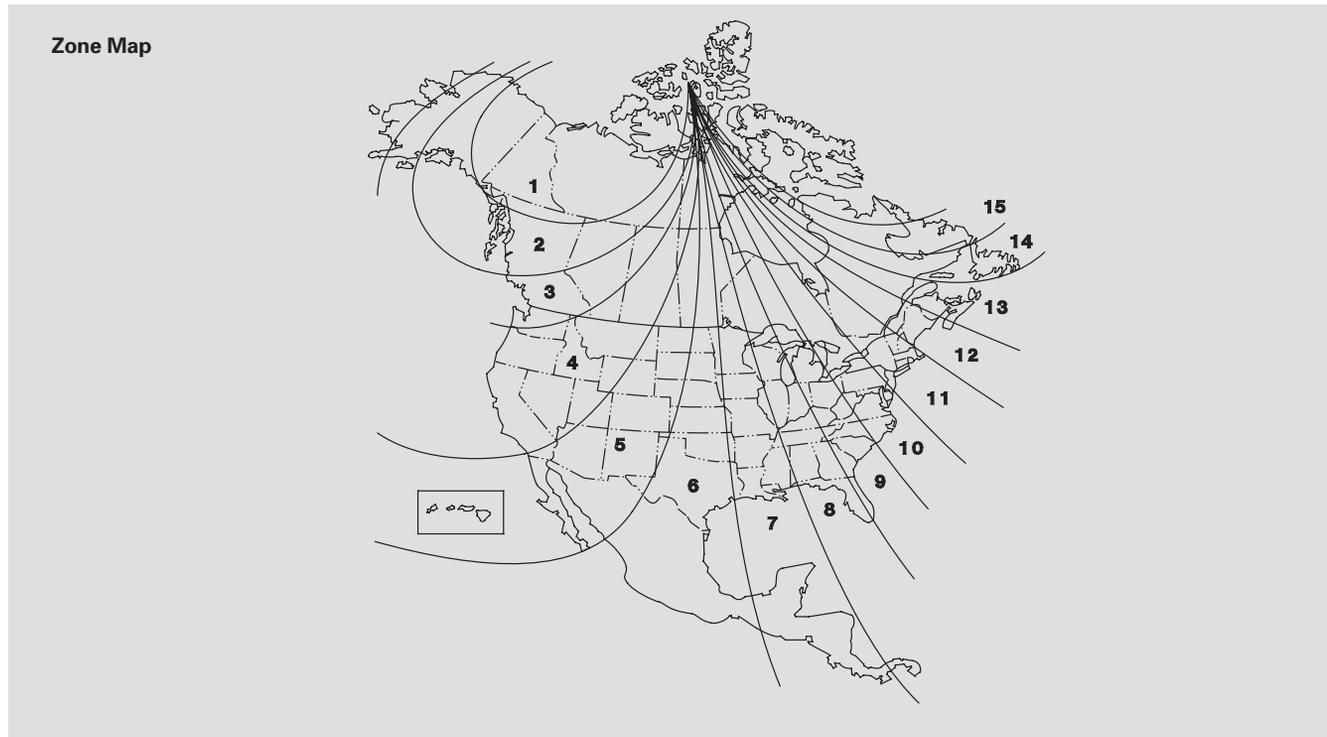
1. Press and hold the and buttons simultaneously until the temperature display changes (about 5 seconds).
2. Verify that the zone setting is correct by finding your area on the map on page 230.



3. Press the button to cycle the count down, or the button to count up. Once the correct zone is displayed, continue to step 4.
4. Press the OFF button to save the zone selection.
5. Press the OFF button again to begin calibrating the compass. The heading should now show “—”.
6. Drive the vehicle slowly in two complete circles.
7. When the display goes from “—” to an actual heading, the unit is calibrated and the display returns to normal.

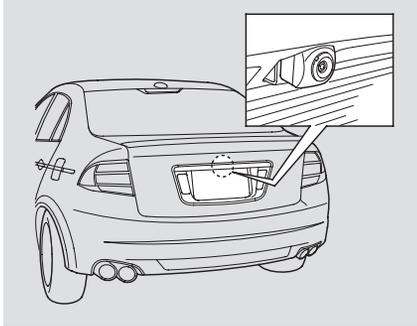
CONTINUED

Compass



Rearview Camera and Monitor

On vehicles with navigation system



Whenever you shift to reverse (R) with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, the rear view is shown on the navigation system screen.

For the best picture, always keep the rearview camera clean, and do not cover the camera lens. To avoid scratching the lens when you clean it, use a moist, soft cloth.

Since the rearview camera display area is limited, you should always back up slowly and carefully, and look behind you for obstacles.

Features

06/08/18 21:19:07 31SEP630 0237

Before Driving

Before you begin driving your vehicle, you should know what gasoline to use and how to check the levels of important fluids. You also need to know how to properly store luggage or packages. The information in this section will help you. If you plan to add any accessories to your vehicle, please read the information in this section first.

Break-in Period	234
Fuel Recommendation	234
Service Station Procedures	235
Refueling.....	235
Opening and Closing the Hood	237
Oil Check	238
Engine Coolant Check	239
Fuel Economy	239
Accessories and Modifications	240
Carrying Cargo	243

Before Driving

Break-in Period, Fuel Recommendation

Break-in Period

Help assure your vehicle's future reliability and performance by paying extra attention to how you drive during the first 600 miles (1,000 km). During this period:

- Avoid full-throttle starts and rapid acceleration.
- Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km).
- Do not change the oil until the multi-information display indicates it is needed.

You should also follow these recommendations with an overhauled or exchanged engine, or when the brakes are replaced.

Fuel Recommendation

Type S

Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded gasoline with a pump octane of 91 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded gasoline with a pump octane of 87 or higher may be used temporarily. The use of regular unleaded gasoline can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade gasoline can lead to engine damage.

All models except Type S

Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded gasoline with a pump octane number of 91 or higher. Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause occasional metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. Use of a gasoline with a pump octane number less than 87 can lead to

engine damage.

We recommend quality gasolines containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits.

In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend, in areas where it is available, the use of gasoline that does NOT contain manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT.

Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact your dealer for service.

Service Station Procedures

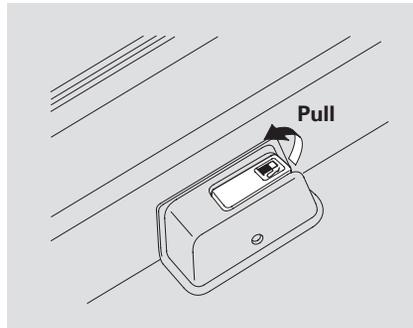
Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 10 % ethanol by volume and up to 15 % MTBE by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol.

If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station, or switch to another brand of gasoline.

For further important fuel-related information, please refer to your **Quick Start Guide**.

On TL with manual transmission
You may hear a knocking noise from the engine if you drive the vehicle at low engine speed (below about 1,000 rpm) in a higher gear. To stop this, raise the engine speed by shifting to a lower gear.

Refueling



1. Park with the driver's side closest to the service station pump.
2. Open the fuel fill door by pulling on the handle to the left of the driver's seat.

⚠ WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

3. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. You may hear a hissing sound as pressure inside the tank escapes. Place the knob on the cap in the notch on the fuel fill door.
4. Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off. Do not try to "top off" the tank. Leave some room for the fuel to expand with temperature changes.

CONTINUED

Before Driving

Service Station Procedure

If the fuel nozzle keeps clicking off even though the tank is not full, there may be a problem with your vehicle's fuel vapor recovery system. The system helps keep fuel vapor from going into the atmosphere. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult your dealer.

5. Screw the fuel fill cap back on until it clicks at least once. If you do not properly tighten the cap, you will see a "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message on the multi-information display, and the malfunction indicator lamp may also come on (see page 68).
6. Push the fuel fill door closed until it latches.

Tighten Fuel Cap Message



Your vehicle's on board diagnostic system will detect a loose or missing fuel fill cap as an evaporative system leak. The first time a leak is detected a "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message appears on the multi-information display. Turn the engine off, and confirm the fuel fill cap is installed. If it is, loosen it, then retighten it until it clicks at least once. The message should go off after several days of normal driving once you tighten or

replace the fuel fill cap. To scroll to another message, press the INFO button. The "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message will appear each time you restart the engine until the system turns the message off.

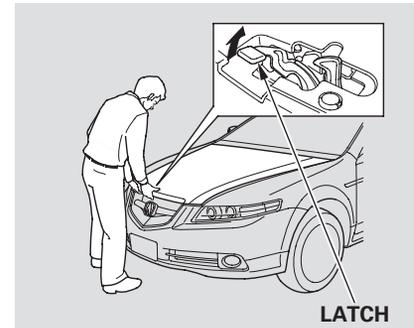
Service Station Procedures

If the system still detects a leak in your vehicle's evaporative emissions system, the malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) comes on. If the fuel fill cap was not already tightened, turn the engine off, and check or retighten the fuel fill cap until it clicks at least once. The MIL should go off after several days of normal driving once the cap is tightened or replaced. If the MIL does not go off, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. For more information, see page 325.

Opening and Closing the Hood



1. Park the vehicle, and set the parking brake. Pull the hood release handle located under the lower left corner of the dashboard. The hood will pop up slightly.
2. Put your fingers between the front edge of the hood and the front grille to locate the hood latch handle. Push this handle up until it releases the hood. Lift the hood.



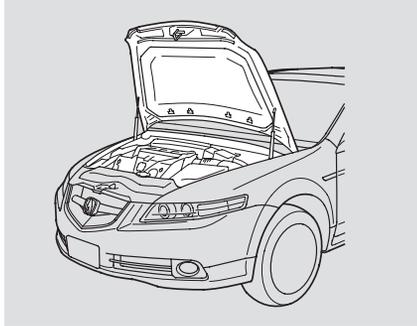
If the hood latch handle moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the handle, the mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

3. Lift the hood up most of the way. The hydraulic supports will lift it up the rest of the way and hold it up.

CONTINUED

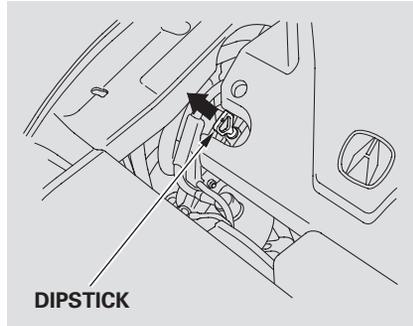
Before Driving

Service Station Procedures



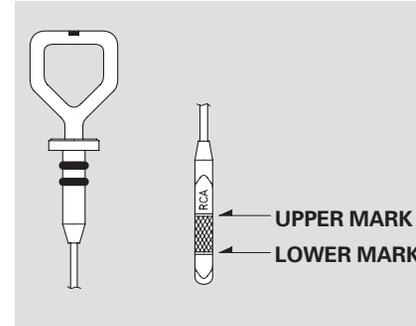
To close the hood, lower it to about a foot (30 cm) above the fender, then press down firmly with your hands. Make sure the hood is securely latched.

Oil Check



Wait a few minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.

1. Remove the dipstick (orange loop).
2. Wipe off the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert it all the way back in its tube.

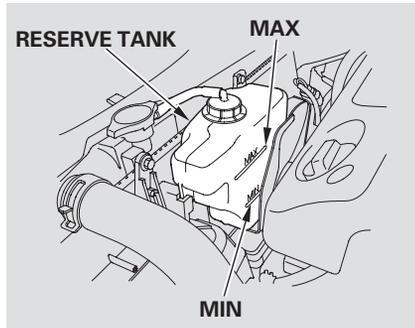


4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

If it is near or below the lower mark, see **Adding Engine Oil** on page 283 .

Service Station Procedures, Fuel Economy

Engine Coolant Check



Look at the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Make sure it is between the MAX and MIN lines. If it is below the MIN line, see **Adding Engine Coolant** on page 286 for information on adding the proper coolant.

Refer to **Owner's Maintenance Checks** on page 277 for information about checking other items on your vehicle.

Improving Fuel Economy

- Always maintain your vehicle according to the maintenance messages given by the multi-information display. See **Owner's Maintenance Checks** on page 277 .

For example, an underinflated tire causes more "rolling resistance," which uses more fuel.

The build-up of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and rolling resistance. Frequent cleaning helps your fuel mileage and reduces the chance of corrosion.

- Drive moderately. Rapid acceleration, abrupt cornering, and hard braking use more fuel.
- Always drive in the highest gear possible.

- Try to maintain a constant speed. Every time you slow down and speed up, your vehicle uses extra fuel. Use cruise control when appropriate.
- Combine several short trips into one.
- The air conditioning puts an extra load on the engine which makes it use more fuel. Use the fresh-air ventilation when possible.

Before Driving

Accessories and Modifications

Modifying your vehicle, or installing some non-Acura accessories, can make it unsafe. Before you make any modifications or add any accessories, be sure to read the following information.

Accessories

Your dealer has Acura accessories that allow you to personalize your vehicle. These accessories have been designed and approved for your vehicle, and are covered by warranty.

Although non-Acura accessories may fit on your vehicle, they may not meet factory specifications, and could adversely affect your vehicle's handling and stability.

⚠ WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, cellular phones, alarms, two-way radios, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags, anti-lock brakes, and tire pressure monitoring system.

Before installing any accessory:

- Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper vehicle operation or performance.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits (see page 327) or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact your dealer for assistance. If possible, have your dealer inspect the final installation.
- Do not install accessories on the side pillars or across the rear windows. In these areas, accessories may interfere with proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Accessories and Modifications

Modifying Your Vehicle

Removing parts from your vehicle, or replacing components with non-Acura components could seriously affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and reliability.

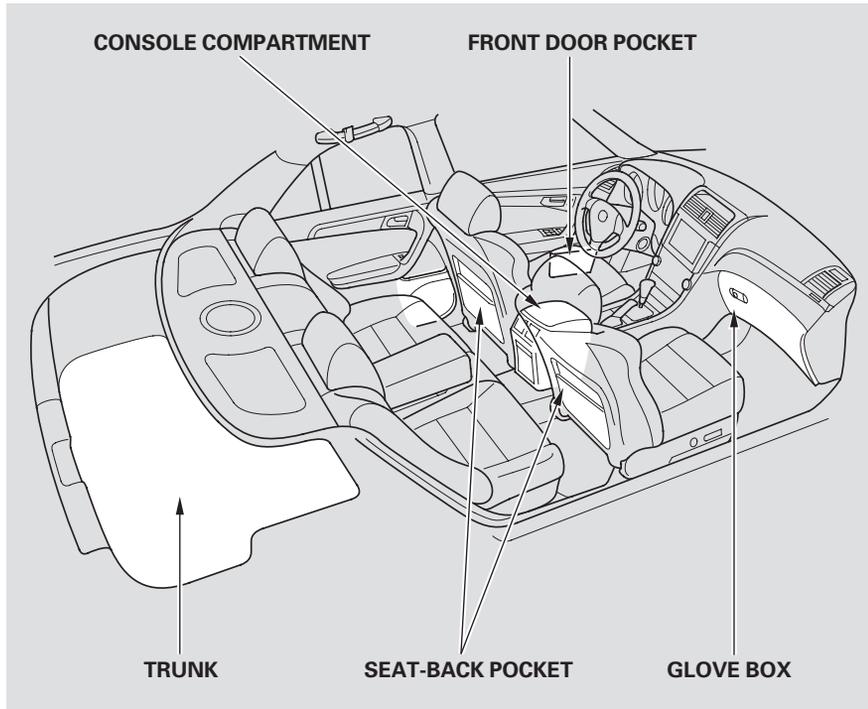
Some examples are:

- Lowering your vehicle with a non-Acura suspension kit that significantly reduces ground clearance can allow the undercarriage to hit speed bumps or other raised objects, which could cause the airbags to deploy.
- Raising your vehicle with a non-Acura suspension kit can affect the handling and stability.
- Non-Acura wheels, can cause excessive stress on suspension components and may not be compatible with the tire pressure monitoring system.

- Larger or smaller wheels and tires can interfere with the operation of your vehicle's anti-lock brakes and other systems.
- Modifying your steering wheel or any other part of your vehicle's safety features can make the systems ineffective.

If you plan to modify your vehicle, consult your dealer.

Carrying Cargo



Your vehicle has several convenient storage areas:

- Glove box
- Front door and seat-back pockets
- Console compartment
- Trunk
- Roof-rack (if installed)

In addition, the trunk pass-through allows you to carry longer items. However, carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe. Before carrying any type of cargo, be sure to read the following pages.

Carrying Cargo

Load Limits

The maximum load for your vehicle is 850 lbs/385 kg (U.S.), 870 lbs/395 kg (Canada). This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories.

WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit:

1. Locate the statement, “the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 850 lbs/385 kg (U.S.), 870 lbs/395 kg (Canada)” on your vehicle’s placard. [The placard is on the driver’s doorjamb.]
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in the vehicle. [Five is seating capacity of your vehicle.]
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from 850 lbs/385 kg (U.S.), 870 lbs/395 kg (Canada).
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the amount equals

850 lbs and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 100 lbs. $(850 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 100 \text{ lbs.})$

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories cargo must not exceed the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) or the gross axle weight rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver’s doorjamb.

Before Driving

Carrying Cargo

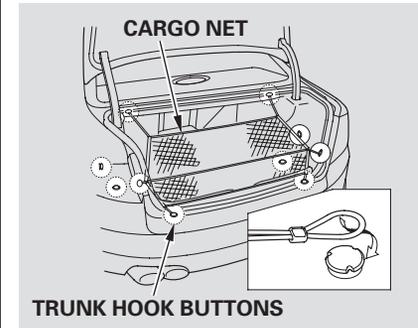
Carrying Cargo in the Passenger Compartment

- Store or secure all items that could be thrown around and hurt someone during a crash.
- Do not put any items on top of the trunk panel. They can block your view and be thrown around the vehicle during a crash.
- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats and interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the proper operation of the seats, or proper operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Keep the glove box closed while driving. If it is open, a passenger could injure their knees during a crash or sudden stop.

Carrying Cargo in the Trunk or on a Roof Rack

- Distribute cargo evenly on the floor of the trunk, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible.
- If you carry large items that prevent you from closing the trunk lid, exhaust gas can enter the passenger area. To avoid the possibility of carbon monoxide poisoning, follow the instructions on page 52 .
- If you carry any items on a roof rack, be sure the total weight of the rack and the items does not exceed the maximum allowable weight. Please contact your dealer for further information.

Cargo Nets



The cargo net can be used to help hold down items stored in the trunk. To use the cargo net, hook it to the buttons on the floor and sides of the trunk. You can use the cargo net in several configurations by hooking it to different buttons. There is also a side net that can be used on either side of the trunk. When you are not using the cargo net, store it in the pocket in the spare tire tool case.

Driving

This section gives you tips on starting the engine under various conditions, and how to operate the manual and the automatic transmission. It also includes important information on parking your vehicle, the braking system, the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system and the tire pressure monitoring system.

Preparing to Drive	246
Starting the Engine.....	247
Manual Transmission.....	250
Automatic Transmission.....	253
Parking.....	260
Braking System.....	261
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)	262
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System.....	264
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	266
Towing a Trailer	270

Driving

Preparing to Drive

You should do the following checks and adjustments every day before you drive your vehicle.

1. Make sure all windows, mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed. Remove frost, snow, or ice.
2. Check that the hood and trunk are fully closed.
3. Visually check the tires. If a tire looks low, use a gauge to check its pressure.
4. Check that any items you may be carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.
5. Check the seat adjustment (see page 103).
6. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors (see page 107).
7. Check the steering wheel adjustment (see page 91).
8. Make sure the doors are securely closed and locked.
9. Fasten your seat belt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seat belts (see page 14).
10. When you start the engine, check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel, and the messages on the multi-information display (see pages 57 , 65 and 68).

Starting the Engine (Models with Manual Transmission)

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
3. Press the clutch pedal down all the way. The START (III) position does not function unless the clutch pedal is pressed.
4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to the START (III) position. Do not hold the key in the START (III) position for more than 15 seconds at a time. If the engine does not start right away, pause for at least 10 seconds before trying again.

NOTICE

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly-coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled. For more information, see page 94 .

5. If the engine does not start within 15 seconds, or starts but stalls right away, repeat step 4 with the accelerator pedal pressed halfway down. If the engine starts, release pressure on the accelerator pedal so the engine does not race.
6. If the engine fails to start, press the accelerator pedal all the way down, and hold it there while starting to clear flooding. If the engine still does not start, return to step 5.

NOTICE

The engine is harder to start in cold weather. Also, the thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters) adds to this problem.

Starting the Engine (Models with Automatic Transmission)

Your vehicle's starting system has an auto control mode. When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, this feature keeps the engine's starter motor running until the engine starts. Follow these instructions to start the engine:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
3. Make sure the shift lever is in Park. Press on the brake pedal.
4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, then release the ignition switch. You do not need to hold the ignition switch in the START (III) position to start the engine. Depending on the outside temperature, the starter motor runs for about 6 to 9 seconds until the engine starts.

If you hold the ignition switch in the START (III) position for more than 7 seconds, the starter motor, depending on the outside temperature, runs for about 10 to 25 seconds until the engine starts.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 10 seconds before trying again.

NOTICE

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly-coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled. For more information, see page 94 .

5. If the engine does not start within 15 seconds, or starts but stalls right away, repeat step 4 with the accelerator pedal pressed halfway down. If the engine starts, release pressure on the accelerator pedal so the engine does not race.
6. If the engine fails to start, press the accelerator pedal all the way down, and hold it there while starting to clear flooding. If the engine still does not start, return to step 5.

NOTICE

The engine is harder to start in cold weather. Also, the thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters) adds to this problem.

Starting the Engine (Models with Automatic Transmission)

Check Starting System Message

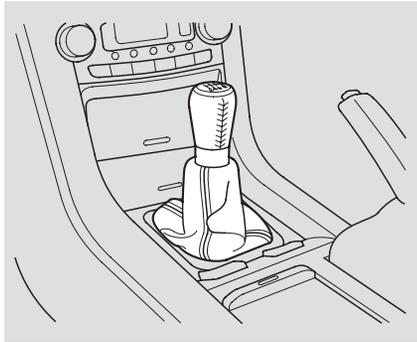


If there is a problem with the starting system, you will see a “CHECK STARTING SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display when the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position. You will also see this message when the auto control mode of the starting system has a problem.

If this message is on, the ignition switch has to be held in the START (III) position manually until the engine starts. The ignition switch can be held in that position up to 15 seconds.

Even though you may be able to start the engine manually without the auto control mode of the starting system, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Manual Transmission



The manual transmission is synchronized in all forward gears for smooth operation. It has a lockout so you cannot accidentally shift from fifth to reverse instead of sixth (see page 251). When shifting up or down, make sure you push the clutch pedal down all the way, shift to the next gear, and let the pedal up gradually. When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

Note: *The engine can be damaged if you inadvertently downshift into the wrong gear (for example, going from third gear at high rpms to second gear instead of upshifting to fourth gear; the engine speed limiter will not work in this situation).*

Come to a full stop before you shift into reverse. You can damage the transmission by trying to shift into reverse with the vehicle moving. Push down the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into reverse, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they won't "grind."

When slowing down, you can get extra braking from the engine by shifting to a lower gear. This extra braking can help you maintain a safe speed and prevent your brakes from overheating while going down a steep hill. Before downshifting, make sure the engine speed will not go into the tachometer's red zone in the lower gear.

⚠ WARNING

Rapid slowing or speeding-up can cause loss of control on slippery surfaces. If you crash, you can be injured.

Use extra care when driving on slippery surfaces.

Manual Transmission

Recommended Shift Points

Drive in the highest gear that lets the engine run and accelerate smoothly. This will give you good fuel economy and effective emissions control. The following shift points are recommended:

Shift up	Normal acceleration
1st to 2nd	17 mph (27 km/h)
2nd to 3rd	27 mph (43 km/h)
3rd to 4th	36 mph (58 km/h)
4th to 5th	41 mph (66 km/h)
5th to 6th	44 mph (71 km/h)

Engine Speed Limiter

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the rpm below the red zone.

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone.

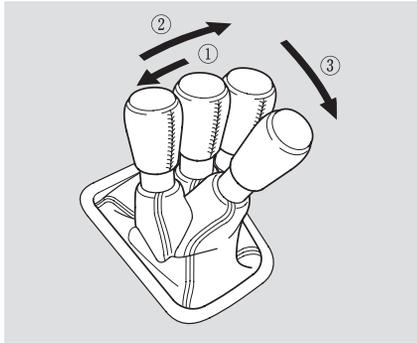
Reverse Lockout

The manual transmission has an electric lockout so you cannot accidentally shift from fifth to reverse instead of sixth while the vehicle is moving.

Driving

CONTINUED

Manual Transmission



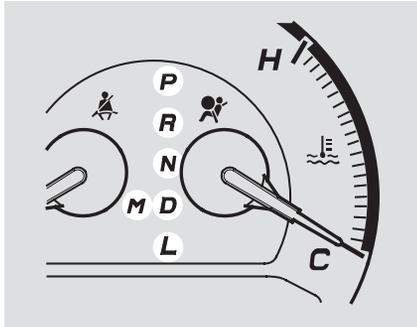
1. With the clutch pedal pressed, move the shift lever to the first/second gear side of the neutral gate, then shift to reverse.

2. If you are still unable to shift to reverse, apply the parking brake, and turn the ignition key to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position.
3. Press the clutch pedal, and shift to reverse.
4. With the clutch pedal still pressed, start the engine.

If you need to use this procedure to shift to reverse, your vehicle may be developing a problem. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer.

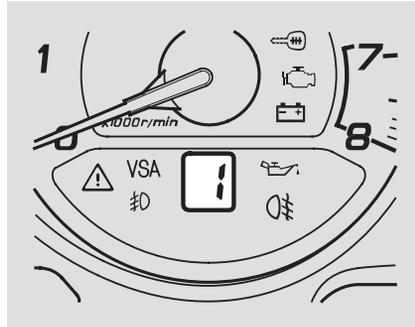
Automatic Transmission

Shift Lever Position Indicators



These indicators on the instrument panel show which position the shift lever is in. The illuminated number under the tachometer shows you the gear you have selected in the Sequential SportShift mode.

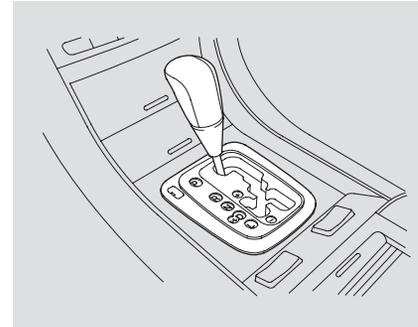
The “D” indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it flashes while driving (in any shift position), it indicates a



possible problem in the transmission.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on along with the “D” indicator, there is a problem with the automatic transmission control system. Avoid rapid acceleration and have the transmission checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

Shifting



To shift from any position, press firmly on the brake pedal. You cannot shift out of Park when the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) or ACCESSORY (I) position.

Driving

CONTINUED

Automatic Transmission

To shift from:	Do this:
P to R	Press the brake pedal, then move the shift lever.
R to N N to D D to L L to D D to N N to R R to P	Move the lever.

Park (P) — This position mechanically locks the transmission. Use Park whenever you are turning off or starting the engine. To shift out of Park, you must press on the brake pedal and have your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If you have done all of the above and still cannot move the lever out of Park, see **Shift Lock Release** on page 258.

To avoid transmission damage, come to a complete stop before shifting into Park. The shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.

Reverse (R) — Press the brake pedal to shift from Park to reverse. To shift from neutral to reverse, come to a complete stop and then shift.

Your vehicle has a reverse lockout so you cannot accidentally shift to reverse from neutral or any other driving position when the vehicle speed exceeds 5–6 mph (8–10 km/h).

If you cannot shift to reverse when the vehicle is stopped, press the brake pedal, slowly shift to neutral, and then shift to reverse.

If there is a problem in the reverse lockout system, or your vehicle's

battery is disconnected or goes dead, you cannot shift to reverse. (Refer to **Shift Lock Release** on page 258).

Neutral (N) — Use neutral if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop briefly with the engine idling. Shift to the Park position if you need to leave your vehicle and apply the parking brake. Press on the brake pedal when you are moving the shift lever from neutral to another gear.

Drive (D) — Use this position for your normal driving. The transmission automatically adjusts to keep the engine at the best speed for the driving conditions. For faster acceleration when in D, you can get the transmission to automatically downshift by pushing the accelerator pedal to the floor. The transmission will shift down one, two or three gears, depending on your speed.

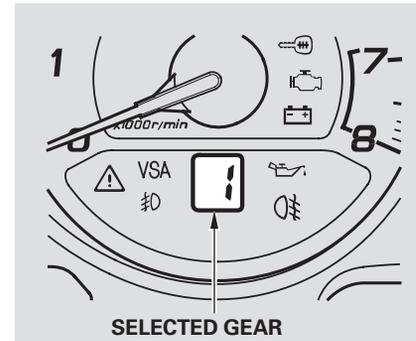
Automatic Transmission

Low (L) — When you move the shift lever to this position, the transmission shifts to the lowest gear that can be selected without exceeding the engine redline. At normal speeds, it selects third gear. As the vehicle slows, it selects second gear at about 56 mph (90 km/h), and first gear at about 29 mph (47 km/h). Accelerating in first gear, the transmission upshifts to second gear at about 37 mph (59 km/h). You must move the shift lever to D for the transmission to upshift to third gear. On Type-S, at closed throttle, it selects second gear at about 61 mph (98 km/h), and first gear at about 37 mph (59 km/h).

Sequential SportShift Mode

With the shift lever in “D” position, you can select the Sequential SportShift mode to shift gears much like a manual transmission, but without a clutch pedal.

To enter the Sequential SportShift mode, move the shift lever further to the driver’s side. To return to “D,” move the shift lever to the passenger’s side.



When you move the shift lever from “D” to the Sequential SportShift mode, the display shows the selected gear.

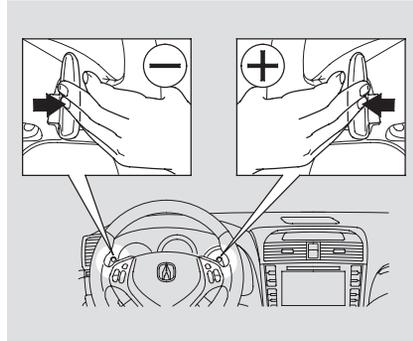
Driving

CONTINUED

Automatic Transmission



In Sequential SportShift mode, each time you push forward on the shift lever, the transmission shifts to a higher gear. Pull back on the lever to downshift. The number of the gear selected is displayed on the instrument panel.



On Type S only

In Sequential SportShift mode, you can also shift up or down by using the + (right side) or - (left side) paddle shifters on each side of the steering wheel.

Each time you press the right side (+), the transmission shifts to a higher gear. Press the left side (-) to downshift. The number of the gear selected is displayed on the instrument panel.

When you accelerate away from a stop, the transmission will start in first gear. You have to manually upshift between first and fifth gears. Make sure you upshift before the engine speed reaches the tachometer's red zone. The transmission remains in the selected gear (5, 4, 3, 2, or 1). There is no automatic downshift when you push the accelerator pedal to the floor.

Automatic Transmission

The transmission may automatically downshift from the higher gear to the lower gear under these conditions:

Driving on level roads and downhill

To shift from	Speed range
4 → 3	under 18 mph (29 km/h)
5 → 4	under 38 mph (60 km/h)

Driving uphill

To shift from	Speed range
4 → 3	under 34 mph (55 km/h)
5 → 4	under 47 mph (75 km/h)

Downshifting gives you more power when climbing, and provides engine braking when going down a steep hill.

The transmission will also shift automatically as the vehicle comes to a complete stop. It will downshift to first gear when the vehicle speed is under 9 mph (15 km/h).

If you try to manually downshift at a speed that would cause the engine to exceed the redline in a lower gear, the transmission will not downshift. The gear indicator will flash the number of the lower gear several times, then return to the higher gear.

If the vehicle speed slows to below the redline of the selected lower gear position while the indicator is flashing, the transmission will downshift and the display will show the selected lower gear.

The table shows the speed ranges for upshifting and downshifting.

To shift from	Speed range
1 → 2	over 0 mph (0 km/h)
2 → 3	over 9 mph (14 km/h)
3 → 4	over 18 mph (29 km/h)
4 → 5	over 37 mph (60 km/h)

Driving

CONTINUED

Automatic Transmission

To shift from	Speed range
2 → 1	under 29 mph (47 km/h)
3 → 2	under 56 mph (90 km/h)
4 → 3	under 93 mph (150 km/h)
5 → 4	under 130 mph (209 km/h)

Type S only

To shift from	Speed range
2 → 1	under 37 mph (54 km/h)
3 → 2	under 61 mph (98 km/h)
4 → 3	under 93 mph (150 km/h)
5 → 4	under 130 mph (209 km/h)

Starting in Second Gear

When you are in Sequential SportShift mode, and the vehicle is stopped, push forward on the shift lever to shift to second gear. You will see “2” in the display. Starting out in second gear will help to reduce wheelspin in deep snow or on a slippery surface.

Engine Speed Limiter

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer’s red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine’s computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the rpm below the red zone.

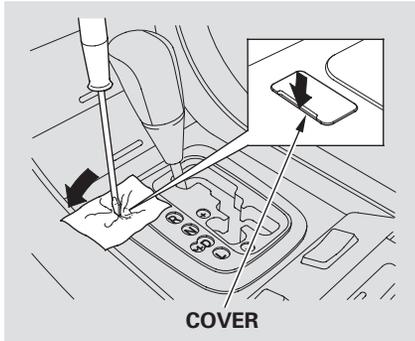
Shift Lock Release

This allows you to move the shift lever out of Park if the normal method of pushing on the brake pedal does not work. This procedure is also used to release the reverse lockout.

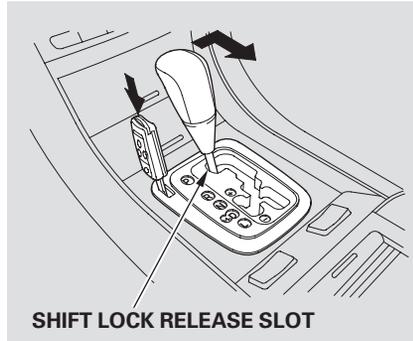
1. Set the parking brake.
2. Make sure the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) position.

To release the reverse lockout, make sure the ignition switch is in the ACCESSORY (I) position.

Automatic Transmission



3. Put a cloth on the edge of the shift lock release slot cover. Using a small flat-tipped screwdriver or a metal fingernail file, carefully pry on the edge of the cover to remove it.



4. Insert a key into the shift lock release slot.
5. Push down on the key and move the shift lever out of Park to neutral.

To release the reverse lockout, move the shift lever from neutral to reverse, then to Park.

6. Remove the key from the shift lock release slot. Press the brake pedal, and restart the engine.

If you need to use the shift lock release, it means your vehicle is developing a problem. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer.

Parking

Always use the parking brake when you park your vehicle. Make sure the parking brake is set firmly, or your vehicle may roll if it is parked on an incline.

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, set the parking brake before you put the transmission in Park. This keeps the vehicle from moving and putting pressure on the parking mechanism in the transmission.

Parking Tips

- Make sure the moonroof and the windows are closed.
- Turn off the lights.
- Place any packages, valuables, etc., in the trunk or take them with you.
- Lock the doors.
- Never park over dry leaves, tall grass, or other flammable materials. The hot three way catalytic converter could cause these materials to catch on fire.
- If the vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb. If you have a manual transmission, put it in first gear.
- If the vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels toward the curb. If you have a manual transmission, put it in reverse gear.
- Make sure the parking brake is fully released before driving away. Driving with the parking brake partially set can overheat or damage the rear brakes.

Braking System

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

Resting your foot on the brake pedal applies the brakes slightly. This builds up heat, and reduces brake effectiveness and brake pad life. In addition, fuel economy can be reduced. It also keeps your brake lights on all the time, confusing drivers behind you.

Constant application of the brakes when going down a long hill builds up heat and reduces their effectiveness. Use the engine to assist the brakes by taking your foot off the accelerator and downshifting to a lower gear.

Check the brakes after driving through deep water. Apply the brakes moderately to see if they feel normal. If not, apply them gently and frequently until they do. Be extra cautious in your driving.

Braking System Design

The hydraulic system that operates the brakes has two separate circuits. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle (the left-front brake is connected with the right-rear brake, etc.). If one circuit should develop a problem, you will still have braking at two wheels, but the brake pedal may not feel normal (see page 326 for more information).

Brake Wear Indicators

If the brake pads need replacing, you will hear a distinctive, metallic screeching sound when you apply the brake pedal. If you do not have the brake pads replaced, they will screech all the time and braking effectiveness could be reduced. It is normal for the brakes to occasionally squeal or squeak when you apply them.

Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than a person can do it.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

You will feel a pulsation in the brake pedal when the ABS activates, and may hear some noise. This is normal: it is the ABS rapidly pumping the brakes. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.



ABS Indicator

If this indicator comes on, the anti-lock function of the braking system has shut down. The brakes still work like a conventional system, but without anti-lock. You should have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.

If the indicator comes on while driving, test the brakes as instructed on page 326 .

Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)

If the ABS indicator and the brake system indicator come on together, and the parking brake is fully released, the EBD system may also be shut down.

Test your brakes as instructed on page 326 . If the brakes feel normal, drive slowly and have your vehicle repaired by your dealer as soon as possible. Avoid sudden hard braking which could cause the rear wheels to lock up and possibly lead to a loss of control.

The VSA indicator will come on along with the ABS indicator.

Important Safety Reminders
ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with steering control during braking.

ABS will not prevent a skid that results from changing direction abruptly, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability. Always steer moderately when you are braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

A vehicle with ABS may require a longer distance to stop on loose or uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow, than a vehicle without anti-lock.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than desired. It also assists you in maintaining traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces. It does this by regulating the engine's output, and by selectively applying the brakes.

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator in the same way it does at other times.

The VSA system cannot enhance the vehicle's driving stability in all situations and does not control your vehicle's entire braking system. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

On manual transmission models, if the VSA system is off and you accelerate from a stop, the vehicle may pull, and it may take extra effort to return the steering wheel to center.



VSA Activation Indicator

When VSA activates, you will see the VSA activation indicator blink (see page 61).



VSA System Indicator

If this indicator comes on while driving, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine. If the VSA system indicator stays on, or comes back on while driving, have the VSA system inspected by your dealer.

If the indicator does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position, there may be a problem with the VSA system. Have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.

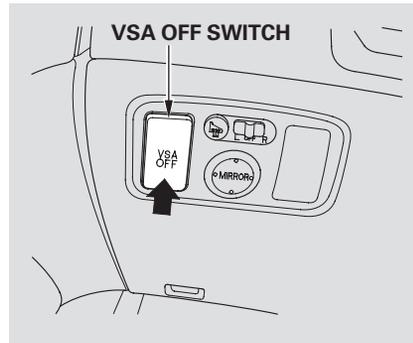
Without VSA, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA Off Switch

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off. When the VSA system is off, the traction control system is also off. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch the VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA and traction control systems switched off.



This switch is under the left vent. Press it to turn the VSA system on and off.

When VSA is off, the VSA activation indicator comes on as a reminder.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

VSA and Tire Sizes

Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may cause the VSA to malfunction. When replacing tires, make sure they are the same size and type as your original tires (see page 306).

If you install winter tires, make sure they are the same size as those that were originally supplied with your vehicle. Exercise the same caution during winter driving as you would if your vehicle was not equipped with VSA.

Driving

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that turns on every time you start the engine and monitors the pressure in your tires while driving.

Each tire has its own pressure sensor. If the air pressure of a tire becomes significantly low, the sensor in that tire immediately sends a signal that causes the low tire pressure indicator in the instrument panel to come on. If this happens, you will see which tire is losing pressure on the multi-information display along with a “CHECK TIRE PRESSURE” message.



Low Tire Pressure Indicator

When the low tire pressure indicator is on, one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle’s tire information placard.

It is possible that the pressures shown on the multi-information display and the pressures you manually measure are slightly different.

If the difference is significant or you cannot make the low tire pressure indicator and message on the multi-information display go out after inflating the tires to the specified values, have your dealer check the system as soon as possible.

If the tire is flat, or if the tire pressure is too low to continue driving, replace the tire with the compact spare tire.

Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle’s handling and stopping ability.

After inflating the tire(s) to the proper pressure, the low tire pressure indicator will remain on until the vehicle is driven at a speed more than 25 mph (40 km/h).

Because tire pressure varies by temperature and other conditions, the low tire pressure indicator may come on unexpectedly.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The TPMS can misinterpret the tire pressure because of differences in the air temperatures. For example, if you check and fill your tires in a warm area, then drive in extremely cold weather, the tire pressure will be lower than measured and could be underinflated and cause the TPMS indicators to come on. Or, if you check and adjust your tire pressure in cooler conditions, and drive into extremely hot conditions, the tires may become overinflated. However, the TPMS indicators will not come on if the tires are overinflated.

Refer to page 302 for tire inflation guidelines.

Although your tire pressure is monitored, you must manually check the tire pressures monthly.

Each tire, including the spare, should be checked monthly when the vehicle is cold, and set to the recommended inflation pressure as specified on the vehicle placard and in the owner's manual (see page 303).

Tire Pressure Monitor



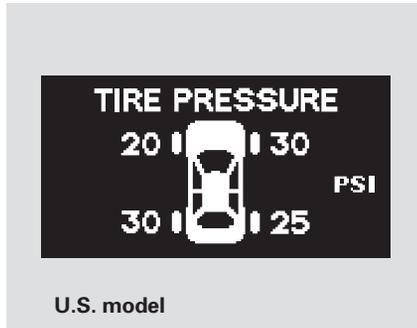
Driving

To select the tire pressure monitor, press the INFO button several times with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position.

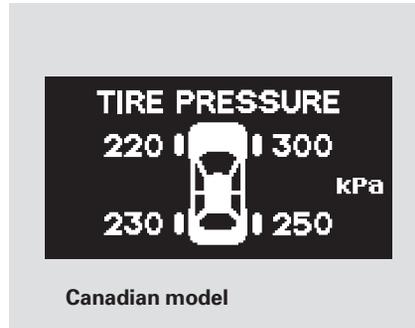
You will see the above display on the multi-information display when all tire pressures are normal.

CONTINUED

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)



To see the inflation pressures of all four tires, press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel. The display changes as shown above.



Each tire pressure is shown in PSI (U.S. models) or in kPa (Canadian models).



Each tire has its own pressure sensor. If the air pressure of a tire becomes significantly low, the sensor in that tire immediately sends a signal that causes the low tire pressure indicator in the instrument panel to come on. If this happens, you will see which tire is losing pressure on the multi-information display along with a "CHECK TIRE PRESSURE" message.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)



If there is a problem with the TPMS, the tire pressure monitor shows a "SYSTEM FUNCTION ERROR" message and the tire pressure readings are not displayed. If this happens, you will first see a system warning message "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" on the multi-information display.

TPMS System Failure



If there is a problem with the TPMS, you will see the above message on the multi-information display.

When the low tire pressure indicator is on, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent

the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the low tire pressure indicator after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

When you restart the vehicle with the compact spare tire, the TPMS system message may also be displayed on the multi-information display after driving several miles (kilometers).

Changing a Tire with TPMS

If you have a flat tire, the low tire pressure and tire monitor indicators will come on. Replace the indicated flat tire with the compact spare tire (see page 313).

Driving

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), Towing a Trailer

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by your dealer or a qualified technician.

After you replace the flat tire, the low tire pressure indicator stays on. This is normal; the system is not monitoring the spare tire pressure. Manually check the spare tire pressure to be sure it is correct.

Never use a puncture-repairing agent in a flat tire. If used, you will have to replace the tire pressure sensor. Have the flat tire repaired by your dealer as soon as possible.

As required by the FCC:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer; attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Maintenance

This section explains why it is important to keep your vehicle well maintained and how to follow basic maintenance safety precautions.

This section also includes instructions on how to read the maintenance messages on the multi-information display, a maintenance record, and instructions for simple maintenance tasks you may want to take care of yourself.

If you have the skills and tools to perform more complex maintenance tasks on your vehicle, you may want to purchase the service manual. See page 355 for information on how to obtain a copy, or see your dealer.

Maintenance Safety	272
Maintenance Minder	273
Maintenance Record	279
Fluid Locations.....	281
Engine Compartment Covers.....	282
Adding Engine Oil	283
Changing the Oil and Filter.....	284
Engine Coolant.....	286
Windshield Washers	287
Automatic Transmission Fluid....	288
Manual Transmission Fluid	290
Brake and Clutch Fluid.....	291
Power Steering Fluid.....	292
Lights	293
Cleaning the Seat Belts.....	299
Floor Mats	300
Wiper Blades	300
Tires	302
Checking the Battery	308
Vehicle Storage.....	309

Maintenance Safety

All service items not detailed in this section should be performed by a certified technician or other qualified mechanic.

Important Safety Precautions

To eliminate potential hazards, read the instructions before you begin, and make sure you have the tools and skills required.

- Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel-related parts.

- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations in this owner's manual.

Potential Vehicle Hazards

- **Carbon Monoxide poison from engine exhaust.** Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you operate the engine.
- **Burns from hot parts.** Let the engine and exhaust system cool down before touching any parts.

- **Injury from moving parts.** Do not run the engine unless instructed to do so.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

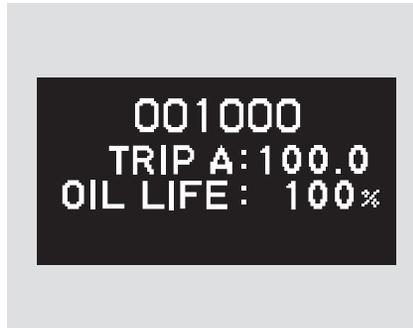
Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

Maintenance Minder

Your vehicle displays engine oil life and maintenance service items on the multi-information display to show you when you should have your dealer perform engine oil replacement and indicated maintenance service.

Based on the engine operating conditions and accumulated engine revolutions, the onboard computer in your vehicle calculates the remaining engine oil life and displays it as a percentage.

Engine Oil Life Indicator



To see the current engine oil life, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, then push and release the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly until the engine oil life appears (see page 72).

The remaining engine oil life is displayed on the multi-information display according to this table:

Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)	Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)
100 % – 91 %	100 %
90 % – 81 %	90 %
80 % – 71 %	80 %
70 % – 61 %	70 %
60 % – 51 %	60 %
50 % – 41 %	50 %
40 % – 31 %	40 %
30 % – 21 %	30 %
20 % – 16 %	20 %
15 % – 11 %	15 %
10 % – 6 %	10 %
5 % – 1 %	5 %
0 %	0 %

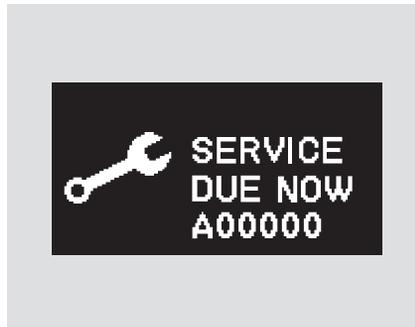
Maintenance

CONTINUED

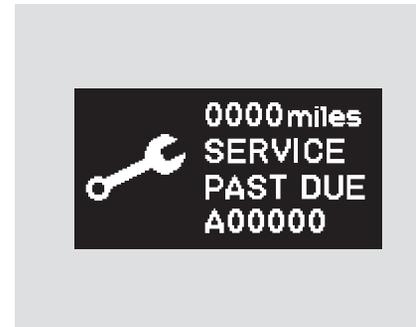
Maintenance Minder



If the oil life is 15 to 6 percent, you will see the message “SERVICE DUE SOON” along with all maintenance items that are needed at oil change time (see page 278).



When the remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent, you will see the message “SERVICE DUE NOW” with the same maintenance items you saw when “SERVICE DUE SOON” was displayed. When you see this message, have the indicated maintenance performed as soon as possible.



If you still do not perform the indicated maintenance, you will see the message “SERVICE PAST DUE” on the display. Immediately have the service performed, and make sure to reset the display (see page 275).

Maintenance Minder

Maintenance Main Items and Sub Items



All maintenance items displayed in the information display are in code. For an explanation of these maintenance codes, see page 278.

Resetting the Engine Oil Life Indicator

Your dealer will reset the display after completing the required maintenance service. You will see "OIL LIFE 100%" on the display the next time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If maintenance service is done by someone other than your dealer, reset the maintenance minder as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
2. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly until the engine oil life is displayed.

3. Press and hold the SEL/RESET button for 10 seconds. The multi-information display will ask for a confirmation.

- If you are sure you want to reset the display, press the SEL/RESET button to select "OK."
- If you do not want to reset the display, press the INFO (▲/▼) button to select "Cancel."

Maintenance Minder

Important Maintenance Precautions

If you have the required service done but do not reset the display, or reset the display without doing the service, the system will not show the proper maintenance intervals. This can lead to serious mechanical problems because you will no longer have an accurate record of when maintenance is needed.

Your authorized Acura dealer knows your vehicle best and can provide competent, efficient service.

However, service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect. Maintenance may be done by any qualified service facility or person who is skilled in this type of automotive service. Make sure to have the service facility or person reset the display as previously described. Keep all receipts as proof of completion, and have the person who does the work fill out the maintenance record. Check your warranty booklet for more information.

We recommend using Acura parts and fluids whenever you have maintenance done. These are manufactured to the same high-quality standards as the original components, so you can be confident of their performance and durability.

Maintenance Minder

U.S. Vehicles:
Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individual using parts that are “certified” to EPA standards.

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the multi-information display.

Owner’s Maintenance Checks

You should check the following items at the specified intervals. If you are unsure of how to perform any check, turn to the appropriate page listed.

- Engine oil level — Check every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 238 .
- Engine coolant level — Check the radiator reserve tank every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 239 .
- Automatic transmission — Check the fluid level monthly. See page 288 .
- Brakes — Check the fluid level monthly. See page 291 .
- Tires — Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects. See page 304 .

- Lights — Check the operation of the headlights, parking lights, taillights, high-mount brake light, and license plate lights monthly. See page 293 .

Maintenance Minder

Symbol	Maintenance Main Items
A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace engine oil*1
B	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter • Inspect front and rear brakes • Check parking brake adjustment • Inspect these items: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots • Suspension components • Driveshaft boots • Brake hoses and line (including ABS) • All fluid levels and condition of fluids • Exhaust system# • Fuel lines and connections#

* 1 : If the message "SERVICE DUE NOW" does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.

: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty in the first column on page 277.

NOTE: • Independent of the maintenance messages in the multi-information display, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.
 • Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
 • Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

Symbol	Maintenance Sub Items
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rotate tires
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace air cleaner element If you drive in dusty conditions, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km). • Replace dust and pollen filter If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km). • Inspect drive belt
3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace transmission fluid Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds results in higher transmission temperatures. On vehicles with automatic transmission, this requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed at 60,000 miles (100,000 km), then every 30,000 miles (48,000 km).
4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace spark plugs • Replace timing belt and inspect water pump If you drive regularly in very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C), or in very low temperatures (under -20°F, -29°C), replace every 60,000 miles (U.S.)/ 100,000 km (Canada). • Inspect valve clearance
5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace engine coolant

Maintenance Record

You or the servicing dealer can record all completed maintenance here. When maintenance is performed, record the mileage, circle the coded item(s) completed, and write in any other non-coded items (such as brake fluid replacement) below the codes. Keep the receipts for all work done on your vehicle. Maintenance can also be recorded in your Acura maintenance journal.

Mileage	Maintenance Performed					Signature		
	A	B	1	2	3	4	5	Date
mi km								
mi km								
mi km								
mi km								
mi km								
mi km								
mi km								

Mileage	Maintenance Performed					Signature		
	A	B	1	2	3	4	5	Date
mi km								
mi km								
mi km								
mi km								
mi km								
mi km								
mi km								

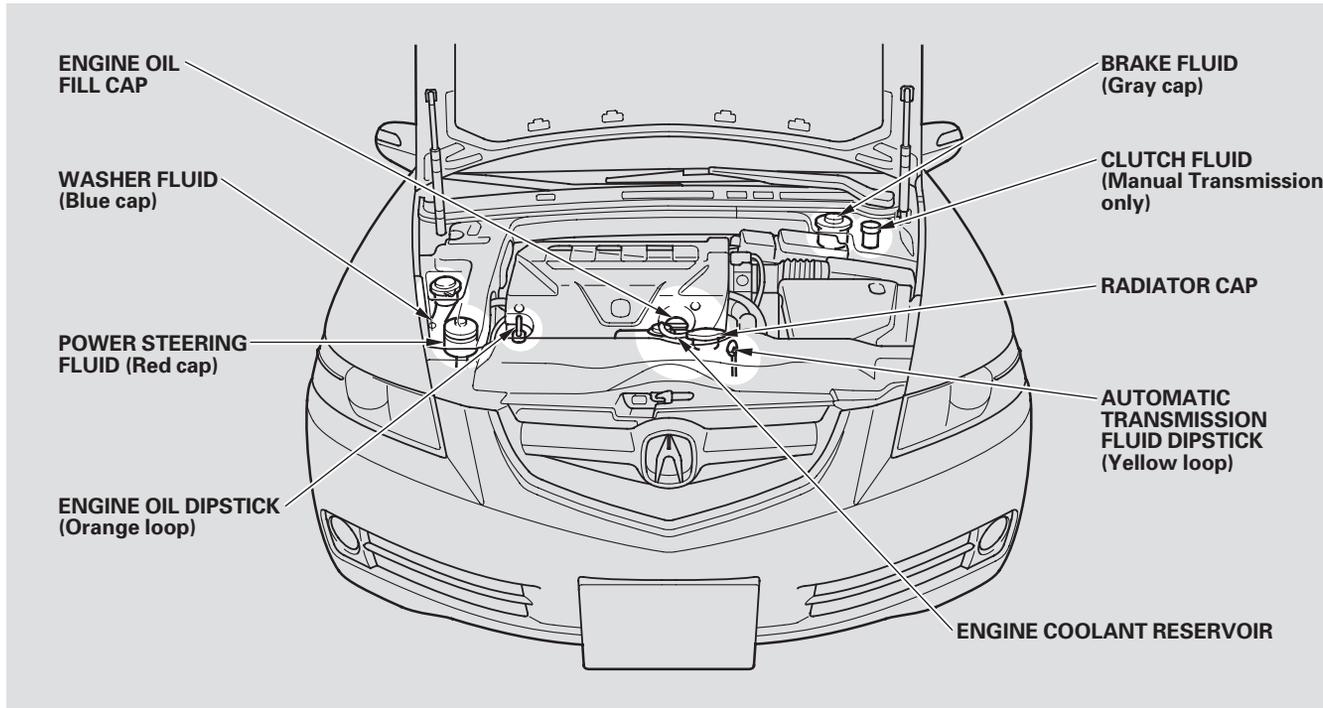
Maintenance

Maintenance Record

Mileage	Maintenance Performed	Signature
		Date
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	

Mileage	Maintenance Performed	Signature
		Date
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5	

Fluid Locations



Maintenance

Engine Compartment Covers

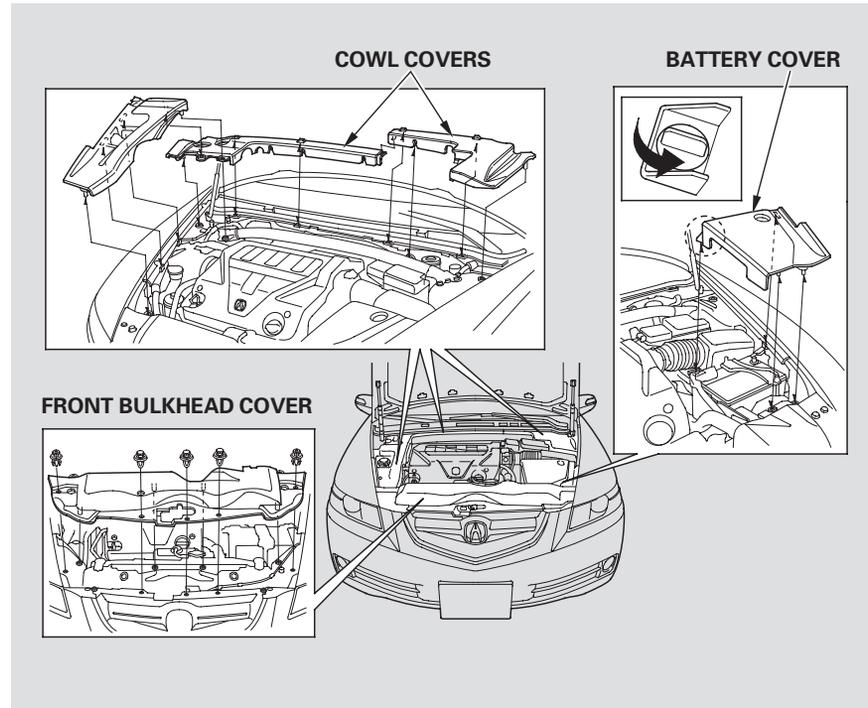
The component parts in the engine compartment are protected by several covers. You may need to remove the covers when you perform some simple maintenance work.

Most of the covers can be removed simply by pulling them straight up.

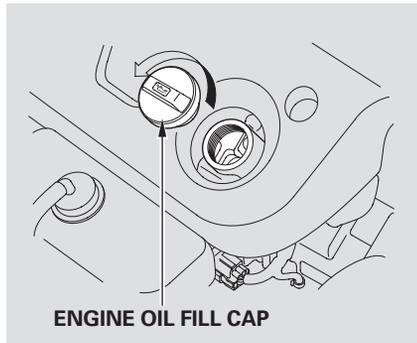
To remove the left or right cowl cover, push the tabs inward and pull the cover straight up.

To remove the front bulkhead cover, first remove the five holding clips using a flat-tipped screwdriver.

When reinstalling the covers, make sure the pins and tabs are in their proper positions.



Adding Engine Oil



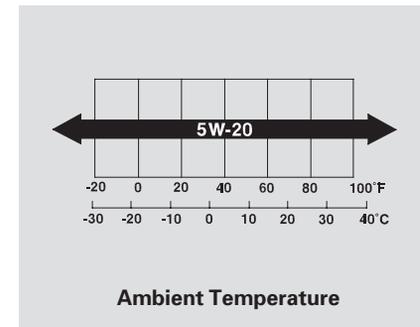
Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap on top of the valve cover. Pour in the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill. Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled oil could damage components in the engine compartment. Install the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely. Wait a few minutes, and recheck the oil level (see page 238). Do not fill above the upper mark; you could damage the engine.

Recommended Engine Oil
Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. Always use a premium-grade 5W-20 detergent oil displaying the API Certification Seal. This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving, and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.



Honda motor oil is the preferred 5W-20 lubricant for your vehicle. It is highly recommended that you use Honda motor oil in your vehicle for optimum engine protection. Make sure the API certification seal says "For Gasoline Engines."

The oil viscosity or weight is provided on the container's label. 5W-20 oil is formulated for year-round protection of your vehicle to improve cold weather starting and fuel economy.



Maintenance

Adding Engine Oil, Changing the Oil and Filter

Synthetic Oil

You may use a synthetic motor oil if it meets the same requirements given for a conventional motor oil: it displays the API Certification Seal and it is the proper weight. You must follow the oil and filter change intervals shown on the multi-information display.

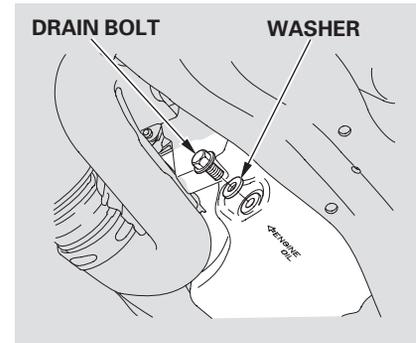
Engine Oil Additives

Your vehicle does not require any oil additives. Additives may adversely affect the engine or transmission performance and durability.

Changing the Oil and Filter

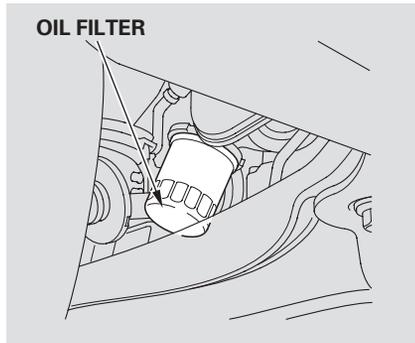
Always change the oil and filter according to the maintenance messages shown on the multi-information display. The oil and filter collect contaminants that can damage your engine if they are not removed regularly.

Changing the oil and filter requires special tools and access from underneath the vehicle. The vehicle should be raised on a service station-type hydraulic lift for this service. Unless you have the knowledge and proper equipment, you should have this maintenance done by a skilled mechanic.



1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, then shut it off.
2. Open the hood, and remove the engine oil fill cap. Remove the oil drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine. Drain the oil into an appropriate container.

Changing the Oil and Filter



3. Remove the oil filter, and let the remaining oil drain. A special wrench (available from your dealer) is required.

Make sure the oil filter gasket is not stuck to the engine block. If it is, remove it before installing a new oil filter.

4. Install a new oil filter according to the instructions that come with it.
5. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt. Tighten the drain bolt to:

29 lbf·ft (39 N·m , 4.0 kgf·m)

6. Refill the engine with the recommended oil.

Engine oil change capacity (including filter):

4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)

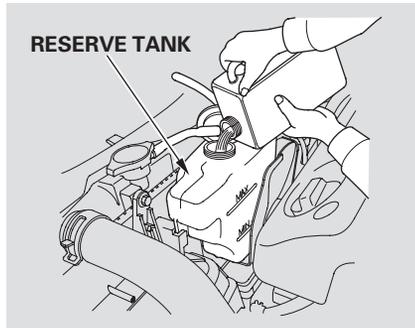
7. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The oil pressure indicator should go out within 5 seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine and check your work.
8. Let the engine run for several minutes, then check the drain bolt and oil filter for leaks.
9. Turn off the engine and let it sit for several minutes, then check the oil level on the dipstick. If necessary, add more oil.

NOTICE

Improper disposal of engine oil can be harmful to the environment. If you change your own oil, please dispose of the used oil properly. Put it in a sealed container, and take it to a recycling center. Do not discard it in a trash bin or dump it on the ground.

Engine Coolant

Adding Engine Coolant



If the coolant level in the reserve tank is at or below the MIN line, add coolant to bring it up to the MAX line. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Always use Honda Long-life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2. This coolant is pre-mixed with 50 percent antifreeze and 50 percent water. Never add straight antifreeze or plain water.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major-brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Make sure it is a high-quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

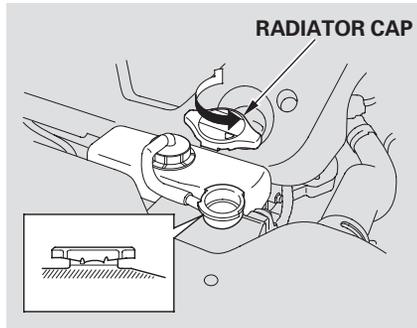
If the reserve tank is completely empty, you should also check the coolant level in the radiator.

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

Engine Coolant, Windshield Washers



1. When the radiator and engine are cool, relieve any pressure in the cooling system by turning the radiator cap counterclockwise, without pressing down.
2. Remove the radiator cap by pushing down and turning counterclockwise.
3. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add

coolant if it is low. Pour the coolant slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

4. Put the radiator cap back on and tighten it.
5. Pour coolant into the reserve tank. Fill it to halfway between the MAX and MIN marks. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

Do not add any rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or engine components.

Windshield Washers

Check the fluid level in the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly during normal use.

On Canadian models: If the fluid level is low, a message will be shown on the multi-information display.

Fill the reservoir with a good-quality windshield washer fluid. This increases the cleaning capability and prevents freezing in cold weather.

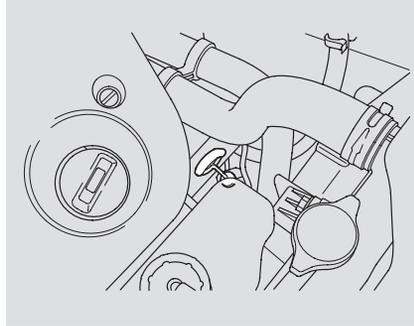
When you refill the reservoir, clean the edges of the windshield wiper blades with windshield washer fluid on a clean cloth. This will help to condition them.

Windshield Washers, Automatic Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

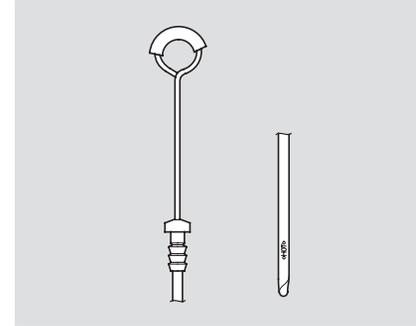
Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint, while a vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump. Use only commercially-available windshield washer fluid.

Automatic Transmission Fluid



Check the fluid level with the engine at normal operating temperature.

1. Park the vehicle on level ground. Start the engine and let it run until the radiator fan comes on, then shut off the engine. For accurate results, wait about 60 seconds before going to step 2, but don't wait longer than 90 seconds.



2. Remove the dipstick (yellow loop) from the transmission, and wipe it with a clean cloth.
3. Insert the dipstick all the way into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.
4. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

5. If the level is below the lower mark, add fluid into the filler hole to bring it to the level between the upper and lower marks on the dipstick.

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

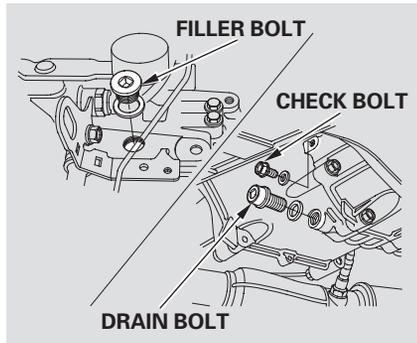
Always use Honda ATF-Z1 (automatic transmission fluid). If it's not available, you may use a DEXRON® III automatic transmission fluid as a temporary replacement. However, continued use can affect the shift quality. Have the transmission flushed and refilled with Honda ATF-Z1 as soon as it is convenient.

6. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid when this service is shown on a maintenance message in the multi-information display.

If you are not sure how to check and add fluid, contact your dealer.

Manual Transmission Fluid



Check the fluid level with the transmission at normal operating temperature and the vehicle sitting on level ground. Remove the check bolt, and look for transmission fluid coming out of the bolt hole. If a small amount of fluid drips out of the bolt hole, reinstall the check bolt.

If no fluid comes out, remove the filler bolt. Slowly add Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF) until it starts to run out of the check bolt hole. Let the fluid run out until it stops, then reinstall the check bolt and the filler bolt.

If Honda MTF is not available, you may use an SAE 10W-30 or 10W-40 viscosity motor oil with the API Certification seal that says “FOR GASOLINE ENGINES” as a temporary replacement. However, motor oil does not contain the proper additives, and continued use can cause stiffer shifting. Replace as soon as it is convenient.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid when this service is shown on a maintenance message in the multi-information display.

If you are not sure how to check and add fluid, contact your dealer.

Brake and Clutch Fluid

Brake Fluid

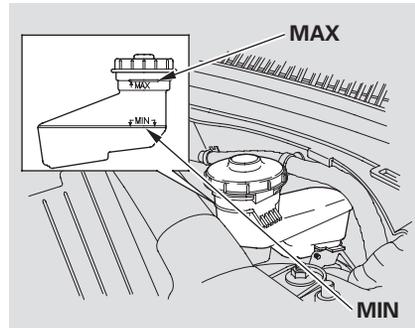
Check the brake fluid level in the reservoir monthly after removing the engine compartment rear cover (see page 282).
Replace the brake fluid every 3 years, independent of mileage.

Always use Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3. If it is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid, from a sealed container, as a temporary replacement.

Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the life of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

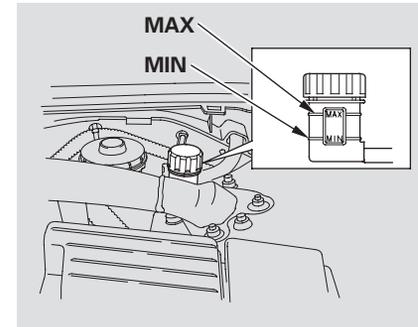
Brake System



The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If the level is at or below the MIN mark, your brake system needs attention. Have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

Clutch Fluid

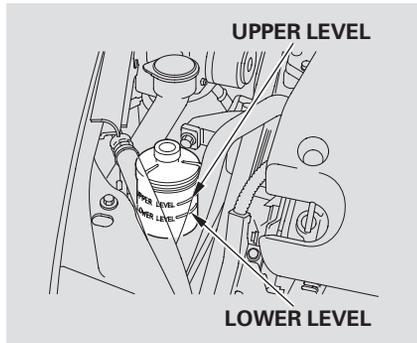
Manual Transmission only



The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If it is not, add brake fluid to bring it up to that level. Use the same fluid specified for the brake system.

A low fluid level can indicate a leak in the clutch system. Have this system inspected as soon as possible.

Power Steering Fluid



Check the level on the side of the reservoir when the engine is cold, and the engine compartment right-side cover is off (see page 282). The fluid should be between the UPPER LEVEL and LOWER LEVEL. If not, add power steering fluid to the UPPER LEVEL mark.

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

Always use Honda Power Steering Fluid. You may use another power steering fluid as an emergency replacement, but have the power steering system flushed and refilled with Honda PSF as soon as possible.

A low power steering fluid level can indicate a leak in the system. Check the fluid level frequently, and have the system inspected as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Turning the steering wheel to full left or right lock and holding it there can damage the power steering pump.

Lights

Headlight Aiming

The headlights were properly aimed when your vehicle was new. If you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk, readjustment may be required. Adjustment should be done by your dealer or other qualified mechanic.

Headlights

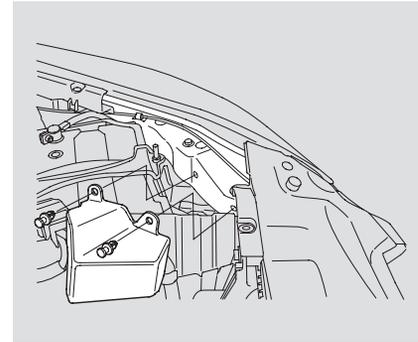
The headlight bulbs are a type of high voltage discharge tube. High voltage can remain in the circuit even with the light switch off and the key removed. Because of this, you should not attempt to examine or change a headlight bulb yourself. If a headlight bulb fails, take your vehicle to a dealer to have it replaced.

Replacing a Daytime Running Light Bulb

1. Remove the left or right side engine compartment cover from the side you are working on by carefully pulling the cover out.

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

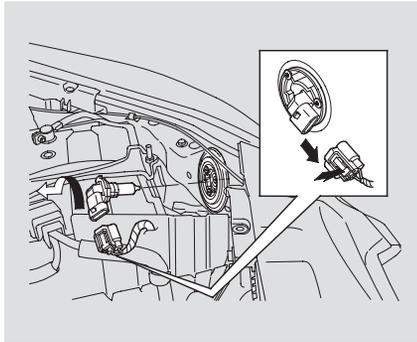


If you are replacing the bulb on the driver's side, remove the air intake cover by removing the two fastener pins and pulling the cover out. Then remove the upper part of the air intake duct by pulling it straight up.

Maintenance

CONTINUED

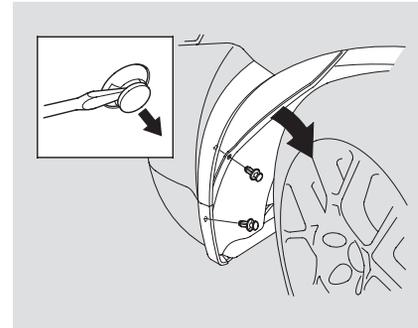
Lights



2. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pushing on the tab and pulling the connector down.
3. Remove the bulb by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

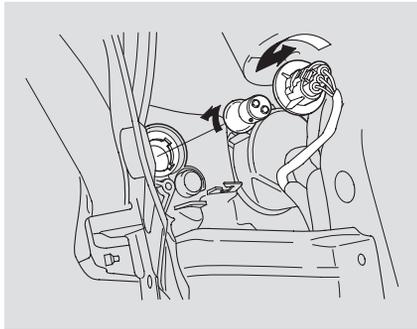
4. Insert the new bulb into the hole, and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.
5. Push the electrical connector back onto the bulb. Make sure it is on all the way.
6. Turn on the lights to test the new bulb.
7. (Driver's side)
Install the upper part of the air intake duct.
8. (Driver's side)
Install the engine compartment corner cover, and secure it with two fastener pins.
9. Install the engine compartment side cover.

Replacing the Front Turn Signal/ Parking Light Bulb



1. Start the engine. If you are replacing a driver's side bulb, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right. If you are replacing a passenger's side bulb, turn the steering wheel to the left. Turn off the engine.

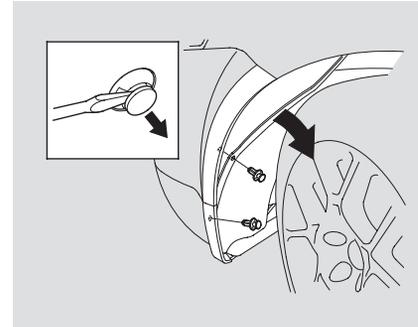
Lights



2. Use a flat-tipped screwdriver to remove the holding clips from the edge of the inner fender cover, and pull the inner fender cover back.
3. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

4. Remove the bulb from the socket by pushing it in and turning it counterclockwise until it unlocks.
5. Install the new bulb in the socket. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
6. Insert the socket into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
7. Test the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
8. Push the inner fender cover in place. Install the holding clips, and lock them in place by pushing on their center.

Replacing a Front Fog Light Bulb

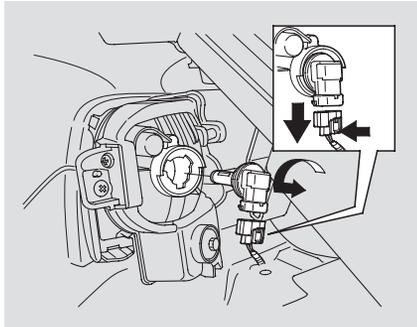


1. Start the engine. If you are replacing a driver's side bulb, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right. If you are replacing a passenger's side bulb, turn the steering wheel to the left. Turn off the engine.

Maintenance

CONTINUED

Lights



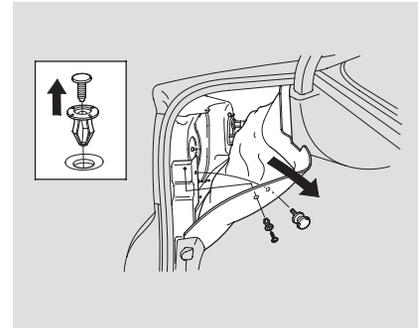
NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

2. Use a flat-tipped screwdriver to remove the holding clips from the edge of the inner fender cover, and pull the inner fender cover back.

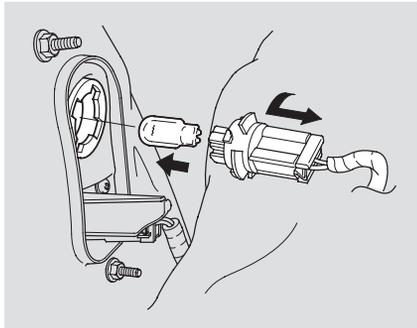
3. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pushing on the tab and pulling the connector down.
4. Remove the bulb by turning it about one-quarter turn counterclockwise.
5. Insert the new bulb into the hole, and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.
6. Push the electrical connector back onto the bulb. Make sure it is on all the way.
7. Turn on the fog lights to test the new bulb.
8. Push the inner fender cover in place. Install the holding clips, and lock them in place by pushing on their center.

Replacing the Rear Turn Signal Bulb (in Fenders)



1. Open the trunk.
Using a small screwdriver, pop up the pin in the center of the fastener, then remove the fastener. Unscrew and remove the cargo net hook from the fender. Pull back the trunk lining.
2. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

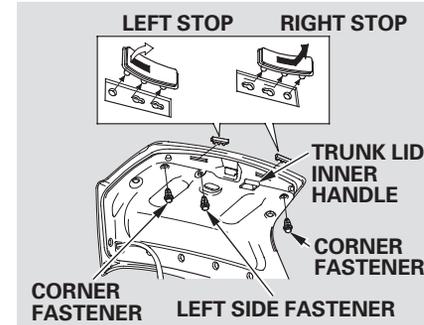
Lights



3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.
4. Reinstall the socket into the light assembly by turning it clockwise until it locks.
5. Test the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

6. Reinstall the trunk lining. Make sure it is installed under the edge of the trunk seal.
7. Insert the fastener into the hole on the side of the trunk lining, and push in the head of the fastener. Screw the cargo net hook into the fender.

Replacing the Back-up Light Bulb (in Trunk Lid)



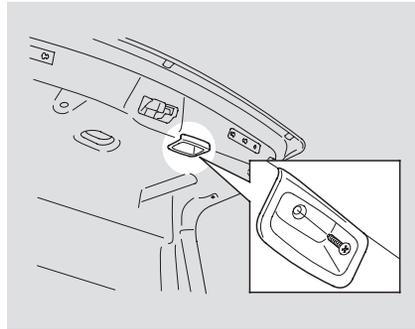
- 1 a. Determine which back-up light is out (left or right), then open the trunk.

Maintenance

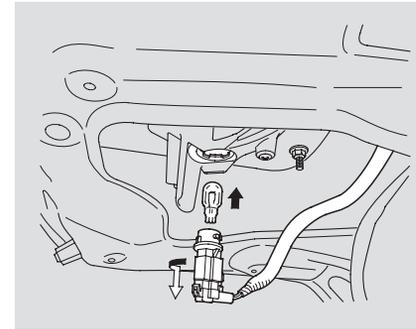
CONTINUED

Lights

- b. Pop up the pin in the center of the left or right corner fastener with a small screwdriver, and remove the fastener. *Left side only:* Remove the left side fastener the same way.
- c. Pull out the outside edge of the rubber stop, then push the stop outward, and pull it to remove it.



- d. Remove the screw from the trunk lid inner handle, and remove the handle trim.
- e. Pull back the corner of the trunk lid lining.

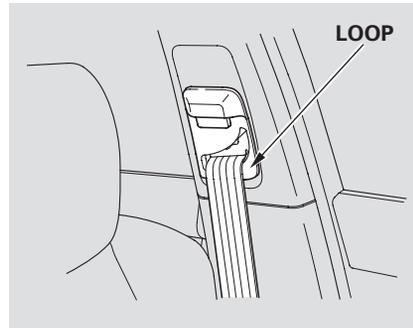


- 2. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.
- 3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.

Lights, Cleaning the Seat Belts

4. Insert the socket into the light assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
5. Test the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
6. Reinstall the trunk lid lining. Make sure it is installed under the edge of the trunk seal.
7. Install all removed parts.

Cleaning the Seat Belts

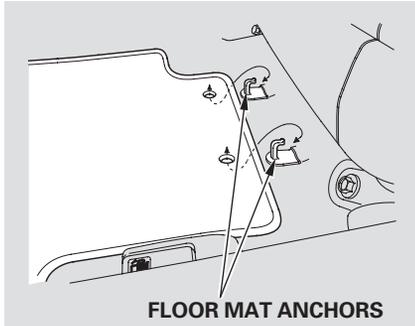


If your seat belts get dirty, use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean them. Do not use bleach, dye, or cleaning solvents. Let the belts air-dry before you use the vehicle.

Dirt build-up in the loops of the seat belt anchors can cause the belts to retract slowly. Wipe the insides of the loops with a clean cloth dampened in mild soap and warm water, or isopropyl alcohol.

Floor Mats, Wiper Blades

Floor Mats



The driver's and right rear passenger's floor mats that came with your vehicle hook over the floor mat anchors. This keeps the floor mats from sliding forward and possibly interfering with the pedals (driver's floor mat) or with the seat weight sensors (right rear floor mat).

If you remove a floor mat, make sure to re-anchor it when you put it back in your vehicle.

If you use non-Acura floor mats, make sure they fit properly and that they can be used with the floor mat anchors. Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mats.

Wiper Blades

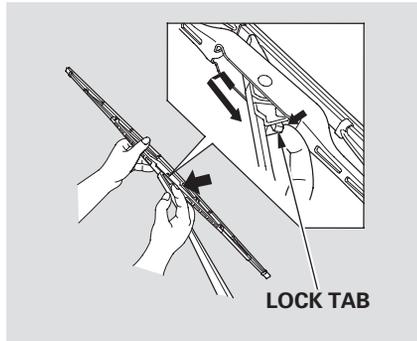
Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every 6 months. Replace them if you find signs of cracking in the rubber, areas that are getting hard, or if they leave streaks and unwiped areas when used.

1. Raise the wiper arm off the windshield.

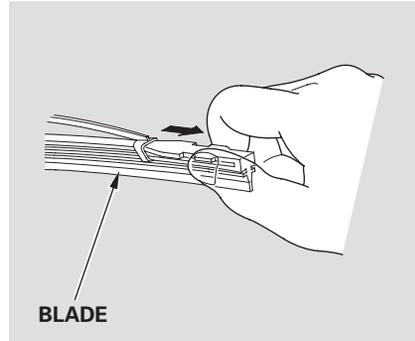
NOTICE

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised, or you will damage the hood and wiper arms.

Wiper Blades

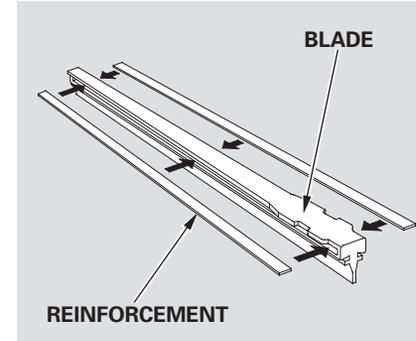


2. Disconnect the blade assembly from the wiper arm by pushing in the lock tab. Hold the lock tab in while you push the blade assembly toward the base of the arm.



3. Remove the blade from its holder by grasping the tabbed end of the blade. Pull firmly until the tabs come out of the holder.

4. Examine the new wiper blades. If they have no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade, and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.



5. Slide the new wiper blade into the holder until the tabs lock.

6. Slide the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm. Make sure it locks in place.

7. Lower the wiper arm down against the windshield.

Maintenance

Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and correctly inflated.

The following pages give more detailed information about your tires, how and when to inspect your tires for damage and wear, and what to do when your tires need to be replaced.

WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Tire Types

All models except Type S with summer tires

Your vehicle is equipped with high performance all-season tires (marked All Season or M + S on the sidewalls). These tires provide excellent handling and braking performance in most driving situations.

Type S with summer tires

Your vehicle is equipped with high performance summer tires. These tires have a high-traction compound and tread pattern to provide superior acceleration, cornering, and stopping under most driving conditions.

However, these tires are not suitable for driving on snow or ice, so all-season or winter tires must be installed for winter driving conditions.

See page 307 for winter driving conditions.

Inflation Guidelines

Keeping the tires properly inflated provides the best combination of handling, tread life, and riding comfort.

- Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.
- Overinflated tires can make your vehicle ride more harshly, are more prone to damage from road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Tires

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) will warn you when tire pressure is low. See page 266 for information on the TPMS.

We recommend that you visually check your tires every day. If you think a tire might be low, check it immediately with a tire gauge.

Use a gauge to measure the air pressure in each tire at least once a month. Even tires that are in good condition may lose 1 to 2 psi (10 to 20 kPa, 0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm²) per month.

Remember to check the spare tire at the same time you check all the other tires.

Recommended Tire Pressures for Normal Driving

The following chart shows the recommended cold tire pressures for most normal driving conditions and speed.

All Models except Type S

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for Normal Driving
P235/45R17 93W	Front: 33 psi (230 kPa , 2.3 kgf/cm ²)
	Rear: 32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm ²)

Type S

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for Normal Driving
P235/45R17 93W 235/45R17 93W	Front: 35 psi (240 kPa , 2.4 kgf/cm ²)
	Rear: 32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm ²)

The compact spare tire pressure is: 60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm²)

Recommended Tire Pressures for High Speed Driving

We strongly recommend that you not drive faster than posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you ever drive in a sanctioned competitive event at sustained high speeds (over 118 mph or 190 km/h), be sure to adjust the cold tire pressures as shown below. If you do not adjust the tire pressure, excessive heat can build up and cause sudden tire failure.

All Models

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for High Speed Driving
P235/45R17 93W 235/45R17 93W	Front: 39 psi (270 kPa , 2.7 kgf/cm ²)
	Rear: 35 psi (240 kPa , 2.4 kgf/cm ²)

CONTINUED

Tires

When you return to normal speed driving, be sure to readjust the tire pressure for normal driving. You should wait until the tires are cold before adjusting the tire pressure.

For convenience, the recommended tire sizes and cold tire pressures are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

For additional technical information, see page 340.

Check the pressure in the tires when the tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours. If you have to drive the vehicle before checking tire pressure, the tires can still be considered "cold" if you drive less than 1 mile (1.6 km). Add or release air, if needed, to match the recommended cold tire pressure.

If you check air pressure when the tires are hot [driven for several miles (kilometers)], you will see readings 4 to 6 psi (30 to 40 kPa, 0.3 to 0.4 kgf/cm²) higher than the cold readings. This is normal. Do not let air out to match the recommended cold air pressure. The tire will be underinflated.

You should use your own tire pressure gauge whenever you check your tire pressures. This will make it easier for you to tell if a pressure loss is due to a tire problem and not due to a variation between gauges.

While tubeless tires have some ability to self-seal if they are punctured, you should look closely for punctures if a tire starts losing pressure.

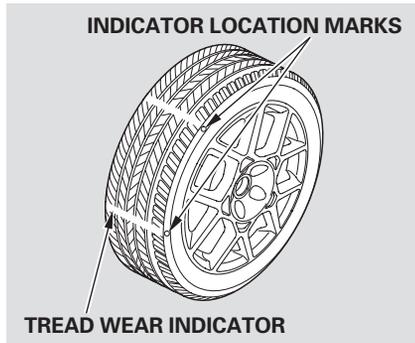
Tire Inspection

Every time you check inflation, you should also examine the tires for damage, foreign objects, and wear.

You should look for:

- Bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions.
- Cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace the tire if you can see fabric or cord.
- Excessive tread wear.

Tires



Your vehicle's tires have wear indicators molded into the tread. When the tread wears down to that point, you will see a 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) wide band running across the tread. This shows there is less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread left on the tire. A tire that is this worn gives very little traction on wet roads. You should replace the tire if you can see the tread wear indicator in three or more places around the tire.

Tire Maintenance

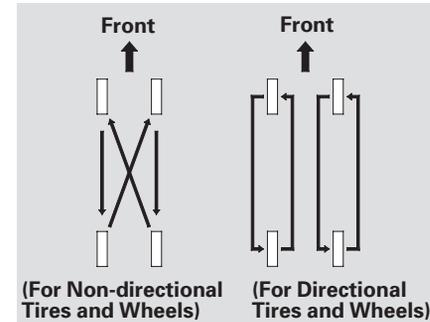
In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

Have your dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. A tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel. When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This increases riding comfort and tire life. For best results, have the installer perform a dynamic balance.

NOTICE

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only Acura wheel weights for balancing.

Tire Rotation



To help increase tire life and distribute wear more evenly, rotate the tires according to the maintenance messages displayed on the multi-information display. Move the tires to the positions shown in the illustration each time they are rotated. If you purchase directional tires, rotate only front-to-back.

Maintenance

Tires

Replacing Tires and Wheels

Replace your tires with radial tires of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's side wall).

Mixing radial and bias-ply tires on your vehicle can reduce braking ability, traction, and steering accuracy. Using tires of a different size or construction can cause the anti-lock brake and the vehicle stability assist systems to work inconsistently.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that is not possible or necessary, replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.

If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Also be sure you use only TPMS specific wheels. If you do not, the tire pressure monitoring system will not work on that tire.

Replacement wheels are available at your Acura dealer.

WARNING

Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

Wheel and Tire Specifications

Wheels:

17 x 8.0 JJ

Tires:

P235/45R17 93W
(All season tire)

235/45R17 93W
(Summer tire)

Tires

See page 340 for DOT tire quality grading information, and page 342 for tire size information.

Winter Driving

Tires marked “M + S” or “All Season” on the sidewall have an all-weather tread design suitable for most winter driving conditions.

For the best performance in snowy or icy conditions, you should install snow tires or tire chains. They may be required by local laws under certain conditions.

Summer Tires

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tires, be aware that these tires are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, consult your dealer.

Snow Tires

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels. The traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may be lower than your original tires. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

Tire Chains

Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, mount only SAE Class “S” cable-type traction devices, with rubber chain tensioners on the front tires. Use traction devices only when required by driving conditions or local laws. Make sure they are the correct size for your tires. Metal link-type “chains” should not be used.

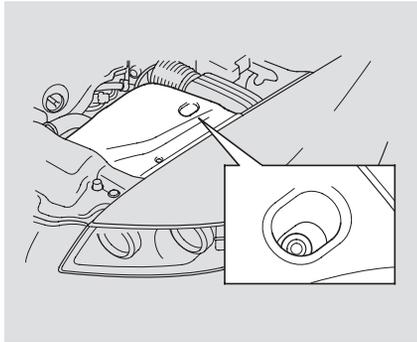
When installing cables, follow the manufacturer’s instructions, and mount them as tight as you can. Make sure they are not contacting the brake lines or suspension. Drive slowly with them installed. If you hear them coming into contact with the body or chassis, stop and investigate. Remove them as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle’s brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

Maintenance

Checking the Battery



Check the condition of the battery monthly by looking at the test indicator window. The label on the battery explains the test indicator's colors.

Check the terminals for corrosion (a white or yellowish powder). To remove it, cover the terminals with a solution of baking soda and water. It will bubble up and turn brown. When this stops, wash it off with plain water. Dry off the battery with a cloth or paper towel. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent further corrosion.

If additional battery maintenance is needed, see your Acura dealer or a qualified technician.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash your hands after handling.**

If you need to connect the battery to a charger, disconnect both cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do the battery maintenance.

Vehicle Storage

If you need to park your vehicle for an extended period (more than 1 month), there are several things you should do to prepare it for storage. Proper preparation helps prevent deterioration and makes it easier to get your vehicle back on the road. If possible, store your vehicle indoors.

- Fill the fuel tank.
- Change the engine oil and filter.
- Wash and dry the exterior completely.
- Clean the interior. Make sure the carpeting, floor mats, etc., are completely dry.
- Leave the parking brake off. Put the transmission in reverse (manual) or Park (automatic).
- Block the rear wheels.
- If the vehicle is to be stored for a longer period, it should be supported on jackstands so the tires are off the ground.
- Leave one window open slightly (if the vehicle is being stored indoors).
- Disconnect the battery.
- Support the front wiper blade arms with a folded towel or rag so they do not touch the windshield.
- To minimize sticking, apply a silicone spray lubricant to all door and trunk seals. Also, apply a vehicle body wax to the painted surfaces that mate with the door and trunk seals.
- Cover the vehicle with a “breathable” cover, one made from a porous material such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, trap moisture, which can damage the paint.
- If possible, periodically run the engine until it reaches full operating temperature (the cooling fan cycles twice). Preferably, do this once a month.

06/08/18 21:29:13 31SEP630 0315

Taking Care of the Unexpected

This section covers the more common problems that motorists experience with their vehicles. It gives you information about how to safely evaluate the problem and what to do to correct it. If the problem has stranded you on the side of the road, you may be able to get going again. If not, you will also find instructions on getting your vehicle towed.

Compact Spare Tire.....	312
Changing a Flat Tire	313
If the Engine Won't Start.....	318
Jump Starting	320
If the Engine Overheats	322
Low Oil Pressure Indicator	324
Charging System Indicator.....	324
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	325
Brake System Indicator	326
Fuses	327
Fuse Locations	329
Emergency Towing	331
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck.....	332

Compact Spare Tire

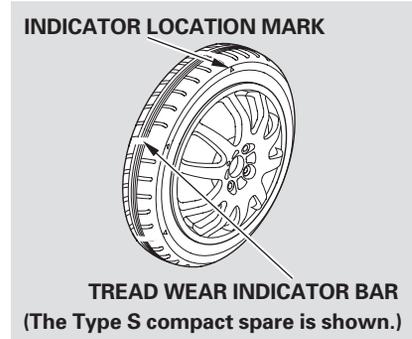
Use the compact spare tire as a temporary replacement only. Get your regular tire repaired or replaced, and put it back on your vehicle as soon as you can.

Check the inflation pressure of the compact spare tire every time you check the other tires. It should be inflated to:
60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm²)

Follow these precautions:

- Never exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- This tire gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

- Do not mount snow chains on the compact spare tire.
- Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle unless it is the same make and model.
- On models with manual transmission, do not drive for a long period with the compact spare tire mounted on a front wheel; it will damage the limited slip differential.



Replace the tire when you can see the tread wear indicator bars. The replacement should be the same size and design tire, mounted on the same wheel. The spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular wheel, and the spare wheel is not designed for mounting a regular tire.

Changing a Flat Tire

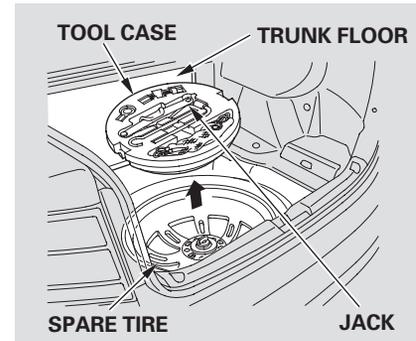
If you have a flat tire while driving, stop in a safe place to change it. Drive slowly along the shoulder until you get to an exit or an area that is far away from the traffic lanes.

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery ground. Put the transmission in Park (automatic) or reverse (manual). Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle while you change the tire.

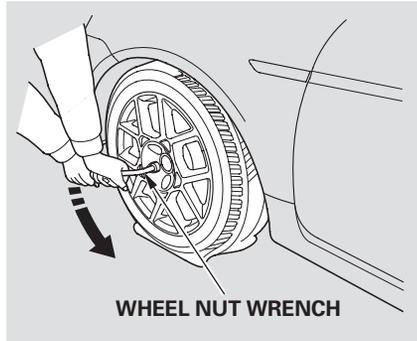


3. Open the trunk. Raise the trunk floor by lifting up on the back edge.
4. Take the tool case out of the spare tire.
5. Unscrew the wing bolt and take the spare tire out of its well.

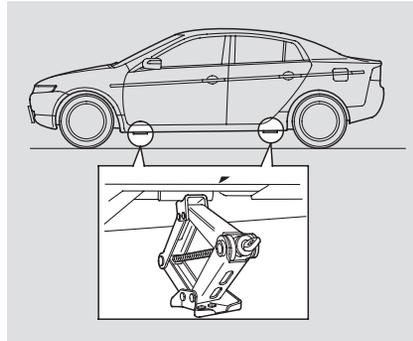
CONTINUED

Taking Care of the Unexpected

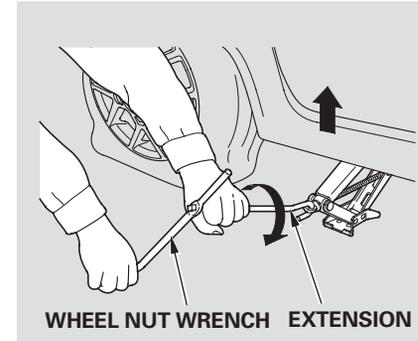
Changing a Flat Tire



6. Loosen each wheel nut 1/2 turn with the wheel nut wrench.

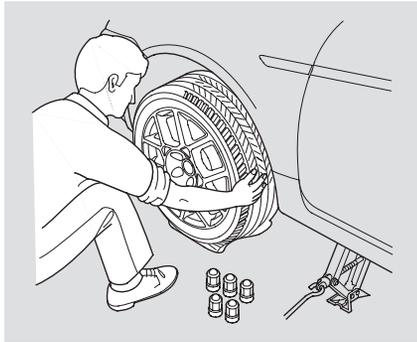


7. Locate the jacking point nearest the tire you need to change. It is pointed to by an arrow molded into the underside of the body. Place the jack under the jacking point. Turn the end bracket clockwise until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point. Make sure the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

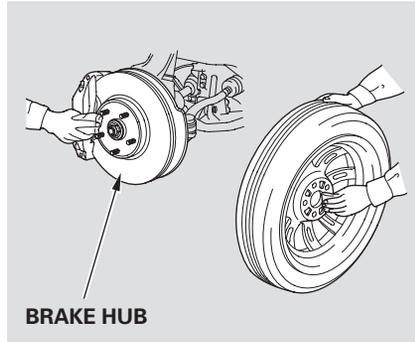


8. Use the extension and the wheel nut wrench as shown to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is off the ground.

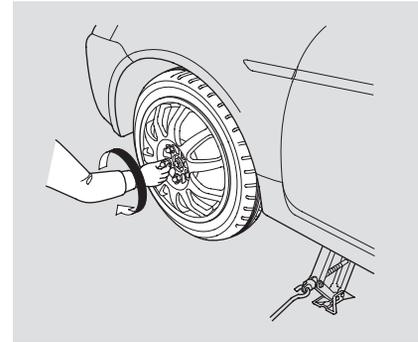
Changing a Flat Tire



9. Remove the wheel nuts, then remove the flat tire. Handle the wheel nuts carefully; they may be hot from driving. Place the flat tire on the ground with the outside surface facing up.



10. Before mounting the spare tire, wipe any dirt off the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a clean cloth. Wipe the hub carefully; it may be hot from driving.

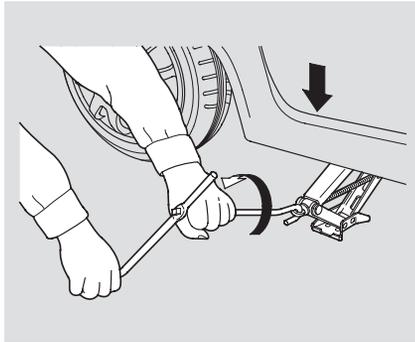


11. Put on the spare tire. Put the wheel nuts back on finger-tight, then tighten them in a crisscross pattern with the wheel nut wrench until the wheel is firmly against the hub. Do not try to tighten the wheel nuts fully.

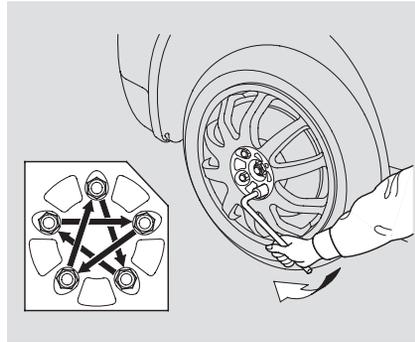
CONTINUED

Taking Care of the Unexpected

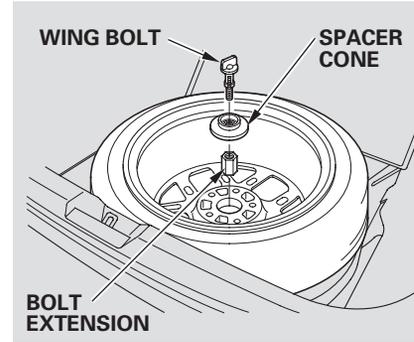
Changing a Flat Tire



12. Lower the vehicle to the ground, and remove the jack.



13. Tighten the wheel nuts securely in the same crisscross pattern. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.
Tighten the wheel nuts to:
80 lbf·ft (108 N·m , 11 kgf·m)



14. Place the flat tire face down in the spare tire well.

15. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, turn it over, and put it back on the bolt. Attach the wing bolt to the bolt extension over the spacer cone.

16. Secure the flat tire by screwing the wing bolt back into its hole.

Changing a Flat Tire

17. Store the jack and tools in the tool case. Place the tool case in the center of the flat tire.

⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and could seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

18. Lower the trunk floor, and close the trunk lid.

If the Engine Won't Start

Diagnosing why the engine won't start falls into two areas, depending on what you hear when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position:

- You hear nothing, or almost nothing. The engine's starter motor does not operate at all, or operates very slowly.
- You can hear the starter motor operating normally, or the starter motor sounds like it is spinning faster than normal, but the engine does not start up and run.

Nothing Happens or the Starter Motor Operates Very Slowly

When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, you do not hear the normal noise of the engine trying to start. You may hear a clicking sound, a series of clicks, or nothing at all.

Check these things:

- Check the transmission interlock. If you have a manual transmission, the clutch pedal must be pushed all the way to the floor or the starter will not operate. With an automatic transmission, the shift lever must be in Park or neutral.
- Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Turn on the headlights, and check their brightness. If the headlights are very dim or do not come on at all, the battery is discharged. See **Jump Starting** on page 320 .

- Turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position. If the headlights do not dim, check the condition of the fuses. If the fuses are OK, there is probably something wrong with the electrical circuit for the ignition switch or starter motor. You will need a qualified technician to determine the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 331 .

If the headlights dim noticeably or go out when you try to start the engine, either the battery is discharged or the connections are corroded. Check the condition of the battery and terminal connections (see page 308). You can then try jump starting the vehicle from a booster battery (see page 320).

If the Engine Won't Start

The Starter Operates Normally

In this case, the starter motor's speed sounds normal, or even faster than normal, when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, but the engine does not run.

- Are you using a properly coded key? An improperly coded key will cause the immobilizer system indicator in the instrument panel to blink rapidly (see page 63).
- Are you using the proper starting procedure? Refer to **Starting the Engine** on page 247.

- Do you have fuel? Check the fuel gauge; the warning indicator may not be working.
- There may be an electrical problem, such as no power to the fuel pump. Check all the fuses (see page 327).

If you find nothing wrong, you will need a qualified technician to find the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 331.

Jump Starting

Although this seems like a simple procedure, you should take several precautions.

⚠ WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

You cannot start a vehicle with an automatic transmission by pushing or pulling it.

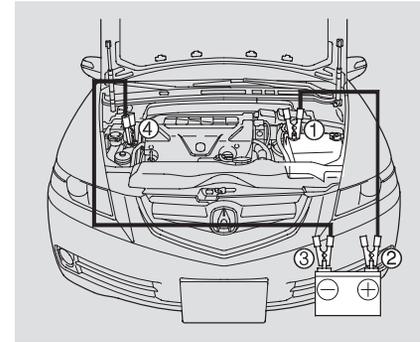
To Jump Start Your Vehicle:

1. Open the hood, and check the physical condition of the battery. In very cold weather, check the condition of the electrolyte. If it seems slushy or like ice, do not try jump starting until it thaws.

NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

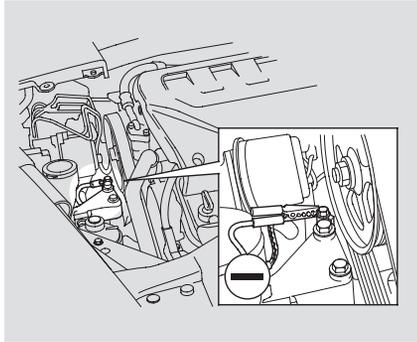
2. Turn off all the electrical accessories: heater, A/C, audio system, lights, etc. Put the transmission in neutral (M/T) or Park (A/T), and set the parking brake.



The numbers in the illustration show you the order to connect the jumper cables.

3. Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on your battery. Connect the other end to the positive (+) terminal on the booster battery.

Jump Starting



4. Connect the second jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal on the booster battery. Connect the other end to the grounding strap as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part of the engine.
5. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, have an assistant start that vehicle and run it at a fast idle.

6. Start the vehicle. If the starter motor still operates slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.
7. Once the vehicle is running, disconnect the negative cable from the engine hanger on your vehicle, then from the booster battery. Disconnect the positive cable from your vehicle, then from the booster battery.

Keep the ends of the jumper cables away from each other and any metal on the vehicle until everything is disconnected. Otherwise, you may cause an electrical short.

If the Engine Overheats

The pointer of the vehicle's temperature gauge should stay in the midrange. If it climbs to the red mark, you should determine the reason (hot day, driving up a steep hill, etc.).

If the vehicle overheats, you should take immediate action. The only indication may be the temperature gauge climbing to or above the red mark. Or you may see steam or spray coming from under the hood.

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer at the red mark can cause serious damage to the engine.

⚠ WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

1. Safely pull to the side of the road. Put the transmission in neutral (M/T) or Park (A/T), and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories, and turn on the hazard warning indicators.
2. If you see steam and/or spray coming from under the hood, turn off the engine. Wait until you see no more signs of steam or spray, then open the hood.
3. If you do not see steam or spray, leave the engine running, and watch the temperature gauge. If the high heat is due to overloading, the engine should start to cool down almost immediately. If it does, wait until the temperature gauge comes down to the midpoint, then continue driving.
4. If the temperature gauge stays at the red mark, turn off the engine.
5. Look for any obvious coolant leaks, such as a split radiator hose. Everything is still extremely hot, so use caution. If you find a leak, it must be repaired before you continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 331).

If the Engine Overheats

6. If you don't find an obvious leak, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Add coolant if the level is below the MIN mark (see **Adding Engine Coolant** on page 286).
7. If there was no coolant in the reserve tank, you may need to add coolant to the radiator. Let the engine cool down until the pointer reaches the middle of the temperature gauge, or lower, before checking the radiator.

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

8. Using gloves or a large heavy cloth, turn the radiator cap counterclockwise, without pushing down, to the first stop. After the pressure releases, push down on the cap, and turn it until it comes off.

9. Start the engine, and set the interior temperature to maximum. Add coolant to the radiator up to the base of the filler neck. If you do not have the proper coolant mixture available, you can add plain water. Remember to have the cooling system drained and refilled with the proper mixture as soon as you can.
10. Put the radiator cap back on tightly. Run the engine, and check the temperature gauge. If it goes back to the red mark, the engine needs repair (see **Emergency Towing** on page 331).
11. If the temperature stays normal, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. If it has gone down, add coolant to the MAX mark. Put the cap back on tightly.

Low Oil Pressure Indicator, Charging System Indicator

Low Oil Pressure Indicator



This indicator should never come on when the engine is running. If it starts flashing or stays on, the oil pressure has dropped very low or lost pressure. Serious engine damage is possible, and you should take immediate action.

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately. Turn off the engine as soon as you can safely get the vehicle stopped.

1. Safely pull off the road, and shut off the engine. Turn on the hazard warning indicators.
2. Let the vehicle sit for a minute. Open the hood, and check the oil level (see page 238). An engine very low on oil can lose pressure during cornering and other driving maneuvers.
3. If necessary, add oil to bring the level back to the full mark on the dipstick (see page 283).
4. Start the engine, and watch the oil pressure indicator. If it does not go out within 10 seconds, turn off the engine. There is a mechanical problem that needs to be repaired before you can continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 331).

Charging System Indicator



If the charging system indicator comes on brightly when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged.

Immediately turn off all electrical accessories. Try not to use other electrically operated controls such as the power windows. Keep the engine running; starting the engine will discharge the battery rapidly.

Go to a service station or garage where you can get technical assistance.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp



If this indicator comes on while driving, it means one of the engine's emissions control systems may have a problem. Even though you may feel no difference in your vehicle's performance, it can reduce your fuel economy and cause increased emissions. Continued operation may cause serious damage.

If you have recently refueled your vehicle, the indicator coming on could be due to a loose or missing fuel fill cap. You will also see a "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message on the multi-information display. Tighten the cap until it clicks at least once (see page 236). Tightening the cap will not turn the indicator off immediately; it can take several days of normal driving.

If the indicator comes on repeatedly, even though it may go off as you continue driving, have the vehicle checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

If you keep driving with the malfunction indicator lamp on, you can damage your vehicle's emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle's warranties.

Readiness Code

Your vehicle has certain "readiness codes" that are part of the on-board diagnostics for the emissions systems. In some states, part of the emissions testing is to make sure these codes are set. If they are not set, the test cannot be completed.

If your vehicle's battery has been disconnected or gone dead, these codes are erased. It can take several days of driving under various conditions to set the codes again.

To check if they are set, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for 20 seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set. If possible, do not take your vehicle for a state emissions test until the readiness codes are set. Refer to **State Emissions Testing** for more information (see page 348).

Brake System Indicator

U.S.

BRAKE

The brake system indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and as a reminder to check the parking brake. It will stay on if you do not fully release the parking brake.

Canada



If the brake system indicator comes on while driving, the brake fluid level is probably low. Press lightly on the brake pedal to see if it feels normal. If it does, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop at a service station (see page 291).

If the fluid level is low, take your vehicle to a dealer, and have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

However, if the brake pedal does not feel normal, you should take immediate action. A problem in one part of the system's dual circuit design will still give you braking at two wheels. You will feel the brake pedal go down much farther before the vehicle begins to slow down, and you will have to press harder on the pedal.

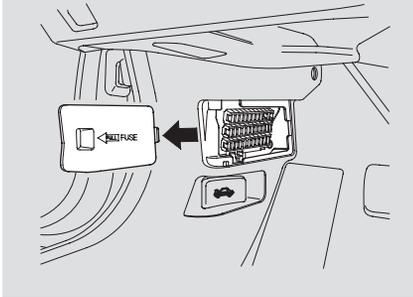
Slow down by shifting to a lower gear, and pull to the side of the road when it is safe. Because of the long distance needed to stop, it is hazardous to drive the vehicle. You should have it towed and repaired by your dealer as soon as possible (see **Emergency Towing** on page 331).

If you must drive the vehicle a short distance in this condition, drive slowly and carefully.

If the ABS indicator and the VSA system indicator come on with the brake system indicator, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer immediately.

Fuses

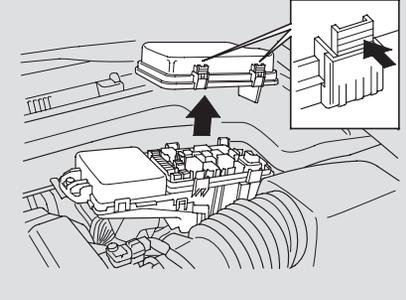
INTERIOR



The vehicle's fuses are contained in two fuse boxes. The interior fuse box is on the driver's lower left side. To remove the fuse box lid, put your finger in the notch on the lid, pull it toward you, and take it out of its hinges.

The under-hood fuse box is on the driver's side next to the air cleaner housing.

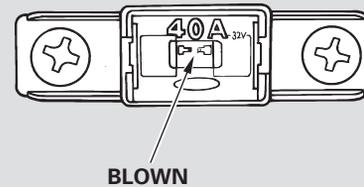
UNDER-HOOD



Checking and Replacing Fuses

If something electrical in your vehicle stops working, check for a blown fuse first. Determine from the chart on pages 329 and 330, or the diagram on the fuse box lid, which fuses control that device. Check those fuses first, but check all the fuses before deciding that a blown fuse is the cause. Replace any blown fuses, and check if the device works.

FUSE

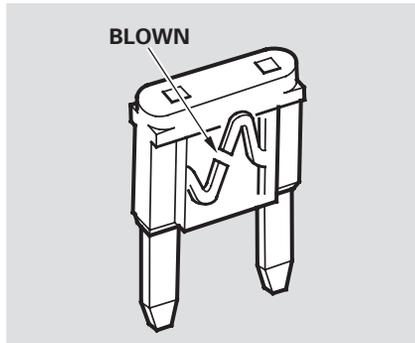


1. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Make sure the headlights and all other accessories are off.
2. Remove the cover from the fuse box.
3. Check each of the large fuses in the under-hood fuse box by looking through the top at the wire inside. Remove the screws with a Phillips-head screwdriver.

CONTINUED

Taking Care of the Unexpected

Fuses



4. Check the smaller fuses in the under-hood fuse box and all the fuses in the interior fuse box by pulling out each one with the fuse puller provided in the under-hood fuse box.
5. Look for a blown wire inside the fuse. If it is blown, replace it with one of the spare fuses of the same rating or lower.

If you cannot drive the vehicle without fixing the problem, and you do not have a spare fuse, take a fuse of the same rating or a lower rating from one of the other circuits. Make sure you can do without that circuit temporarily (such as the accessory power socket or radio).

If you replace the blown fuse with a spare fuse that has a lower rating, it might blow out again. This does not indicate anything wrong. Replace the fuse with one of the correct rating as soon as you can.

NOTICE

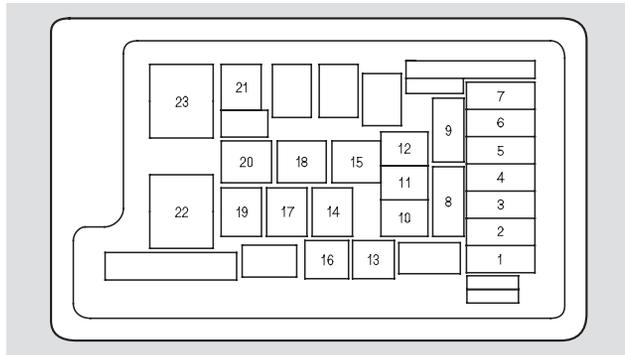
Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system. If you do not have a replacement fuse with the proper rating for the circuit, install one with a lower rating.

6. If the replacement fuse of the same rating blows in a short time, there is probably a serious electrical problem with your vehicle. Leave the blown fuse in that circuit, and have your vehicle checked by a qualified technician.

If the radio fuse is removed, the audio system will disable itself. The next time you turn on the radio you will see "CODE" in the frequency display. Use the preset buttons to enter the five-digit code (see page 182).

Fuse Locations

UNDER-HOOD FUSE BOX



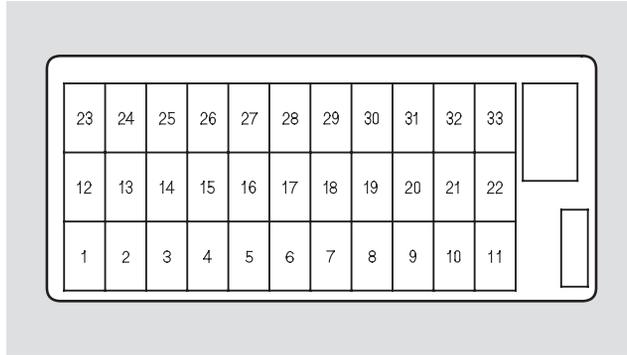
No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	15 A	Left Headlight Low Beam
2	30 A	Rear Defroster Coil
3	7.5 A	Left Headlight High Beam
4	10 A	Small Light
5	7.5 A	Right Headlight High Beam

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
6	15 A	Right Headlight Low Beam
7	7.5 A	Back Up
8	15 A	FI ECU
9	30 A	Condenser Fan
10	10 A	Fog Light
11	30 A	Radiator Fan Motor
12	7.5 A	MG Clutch Relay
13	20 A	Horn, Stop
14	40 A	Rear Defroster
15	40 A	Back UP, ACC
16	15 A	Hazard Warning
17	30 A	VSA Pump Motor Relay
18	40 A	VSA Fail Safe Relay
19	40 A	FI ECU (ECM/PCM)
20	40 A	Power Seat
21	40 A	Heater Motor
22	120 A	Battery
23	50 A	IGI Main

Taking Care of the Unexpected

Fuse Locations

INTERIOR FUSE BOX



No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	15 A	DBW
2	15 A	IG1 Coil
3	15 A	Daytime Running Light
4	15 A	LAF
5	20 A	Radio
6	7.5 A	Interior Lights
7	7.5 A	Back Up
8	20 A	Door Lock
9	15 A	Accessory Socket

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
10	7.5 A	IG1 OPDS
11	30 A	IG1 Wiper
12	7.5 A	TPMS
13	20 A	Passenger's Power Seat (Recline)
14	20 A	Driver's Power Seat (Slide)
15	20 A	Seat Heater
16	20 A	Driver's Power Seat (Recline)
17	20 A	Passenger's Power Seat (Slide)
18	15 A	IG1 ACG
19	15 A	IG1 Fuel Pump
20	15 A	Washer
21	7.5 A	Meter
22	10 A	SRS
23	7.5 A	IGP
24	20 A	Rear Left Power Window
25	20 A	Rear Right Power Window
26	30 A	Front Right Power Window
27	30 A	Front Left Power Window
28	20 A	Moonroof
29	7.5 A	VBSOL
30	7.5 A	HAC
31	7.5 A	OP2
32	7.5 A	ACC
33	7.5 A	HAC OP

Emergency Towing

If your vehicle needs to be towed, call a professional towing service or organization. Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous. There are two ways to tow your vehicle:

Flat-bed Equipment – The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck. **This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

Wheel-lift Equipment – The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the tires (front or rear) and lift them off the ground. The other two tires remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

If, due to damage, your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground, do this:

Manual transmission:

- Release the parking brake.
- Shift the transmission to neutral.

Automatic transmission:

- Release the parking brake.
- Start the engine.
- Shift to D, then to N.
- Turn off the engine.

NOTICE

Improper towing preparation will damage the transmission. Follow the above procedure exactly. If you cannot shift the transmission or start the engine (automatic transmission), your vehicle must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.

With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 50 miles (80 km), and keep the speed below 35 mph (55 km/h). If your vehicle is equipped with a front spoiler, remove it before towing so it is not damaged.

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

If you decide to tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, make sure you use a properly-designed and attached tow bar. Prepare the vehicle for towing as described above, and leave the ignition switched in the ACCESSORY (I) position so the steering wheel does not lock. Make sure the radio and any items plugged into the accessory power socket are turned off so they do not run down the battery.

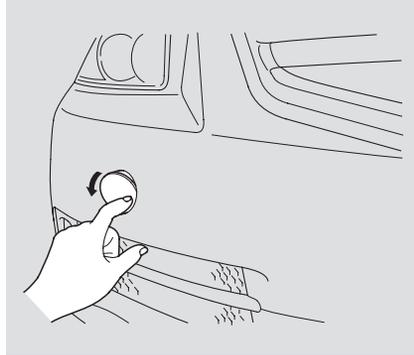
CONTINUED

Emergency Towing, If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck

NOTICE

The steering system can be damaged if the steering wheel is locked. Leave the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position, and make sure the steering wheel turns freely before you begin towing.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck

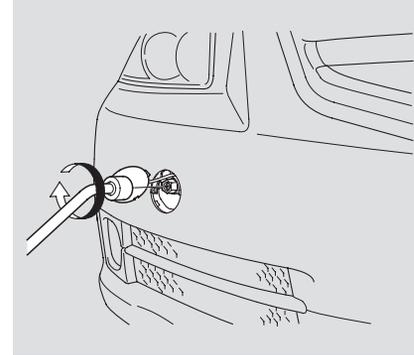


If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, or snow, call a towing service to pull it out (see page 331).

For very short distances, such as freeing the vehicle, you can use the detachable towing hook that mounts on the anchor in the front bumper.

To use the towing hook:

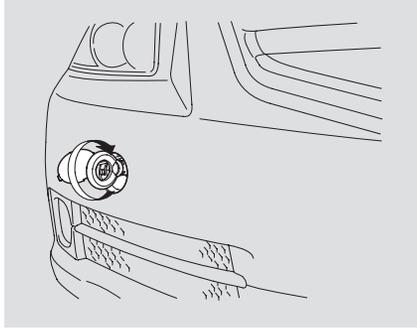
1. Remove the cover from the



bumper by pushing the lower part of the cover with your finger.

2. Remove the towing hook, hook extension, and wheel nut wrench from the tool case in the spare tire.
3. Using the wheel nut wrench, fasten the extension into the bolt hole.

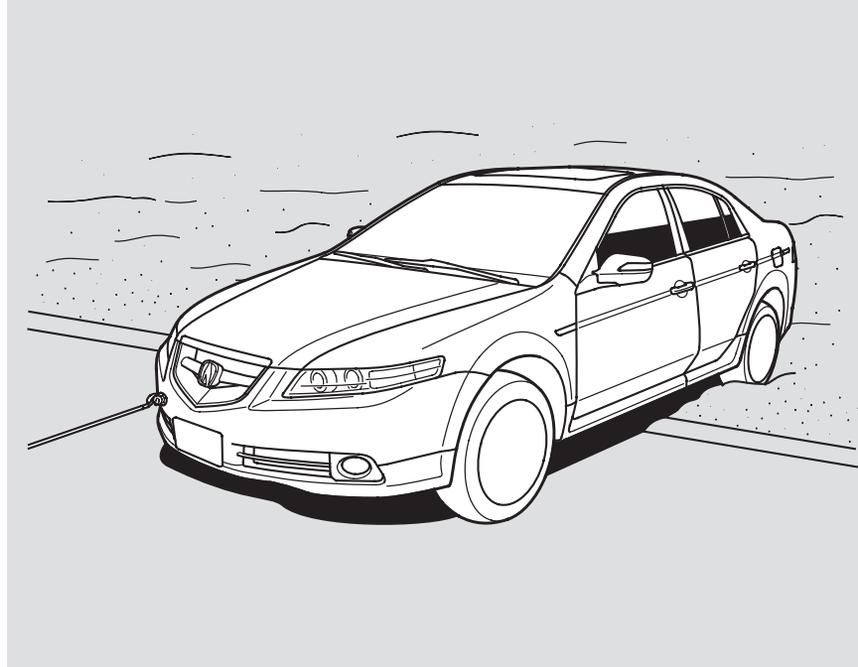
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck



4. Screw the towing hook into the hook extension, and tighten it securely by hand.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle, use the towing hook for straight, flat ground towing only. Do not tow at an angle. The tow hook should not be used to tow the vehicle onto a flat bed. Do not use it as a tie down.



Taking Care of the Unexpected

06/08/18 21:32:05 31SEP630 0339

Technical Information

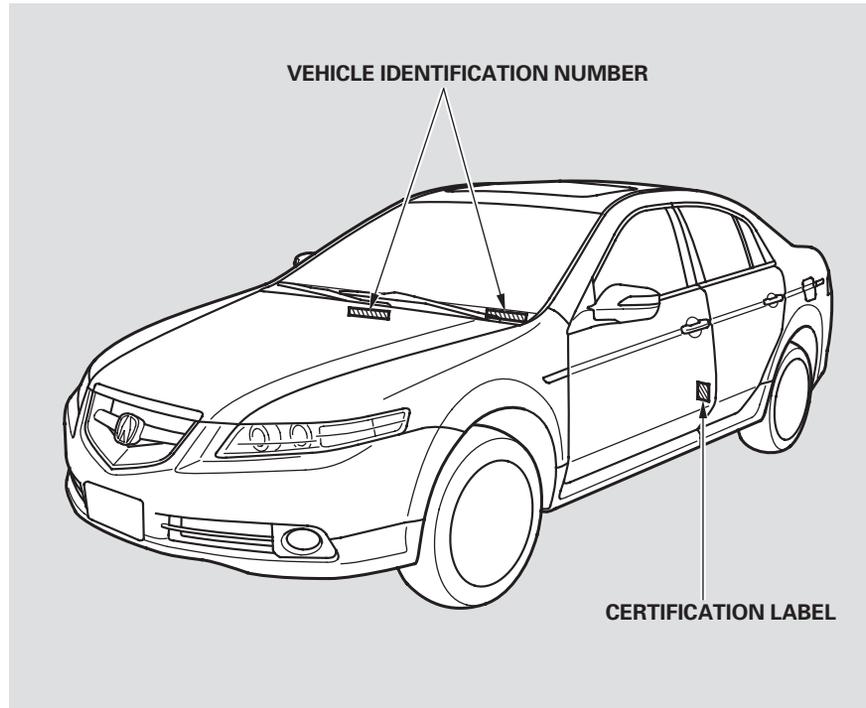
The diagrams in this section give you the dimensions and capacities of your vehicle and the locations of the identification numbers. It also includes information you should know about your vehicle's tires and emissions control systems.

Identification Numbers.....	336	Emissions Controls.....	345
Specifications	338	The Clean Air Act.....	345
DOT Tire Quality Grading		Crankcase Emissions Control	
(U.S. Vehicles)	340	System.....	345
Treadwear	340	Evaporative Emissions Control	
Traction.....	340	System.....	345
Temperature	341	Onboard Refueling Vapor	
Tire Labeling	342	Recovery	345
Tire Pressure Monitoring System		Exhaust Emissions Controls....	346
(TPMS) – Required Federal		PGM-FI System	346
Explanation.....	343	Ignition Timing Control	
		System.....	346
		Exhaust Gas Recirculation	
		(EGR) System.....	346
		Three Way Catalytic	
		Converter.....	346
		Replacement Parts.....	346
		Three Way Catalytic Converter...	347
		State Emissions Testing	348

Identification Numbers

Your vehicle has several identifying numbers located in various places.

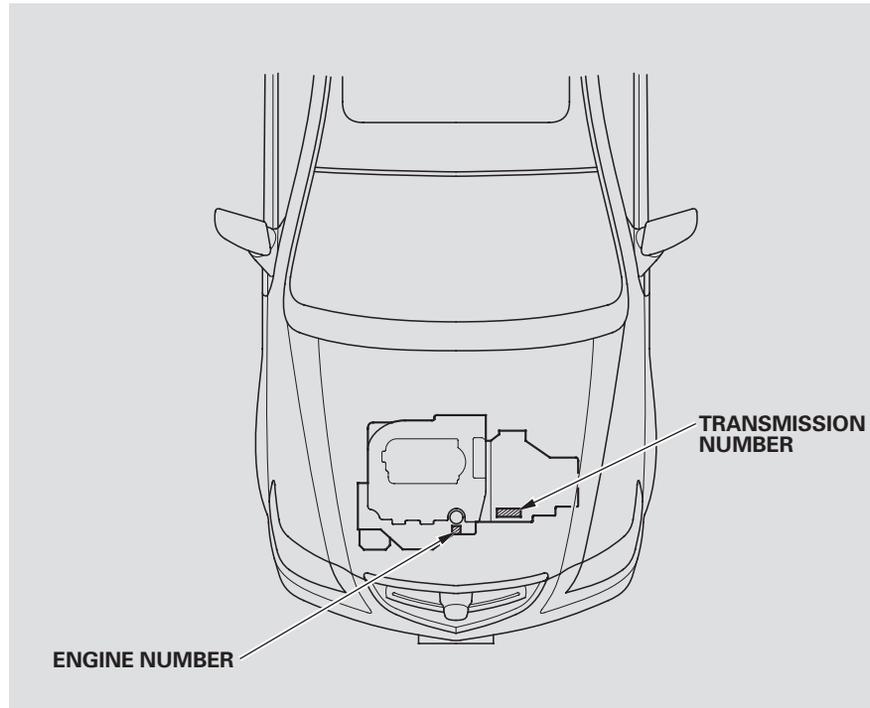
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the 17-digit number your dealer uses to register your vehicle for warranty purposes. It is also necessary for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The easiest place to find the VIN is on a plate fastened to the top of the dashboard. You can see it by looking through the windshield on the driver's side. It is also on the certification label attached to the driver's doorjamb, and is stamped on the engine compartment bulkhead. The VIN is also provided in bar code on the certification label.



Identification Numbers

The engine number is stamped into the engine block.

The transmission number is on a label on top of the transmission.



Technical Information

Specifications

Dimensions

Length	189.3 in (4,809 mm) 189.8 in (4,822 mm)*
Width	75.4 in (1,916 mm)
Height	56.7 in (1,441 mm)
Wheelbase	107.9 in (2,740 mm)
Track	62.1 in (1,577 mm)
Front	62.0 in (1,576 mm)
Rear	62.0 in (1,576 mm)

* : Type S

Weights

Gross vehicle weight rating	See the certification label attached to the driver's doorjamb.
-----------------------------	--

Air Conditioning

Refrigerant type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge quantity	17.6 – 19.4 oz (500 – 550 g)
Lubricant type	ND-OIL8

Capacities

Fuel tank	Approx. 17.1 US gal (64.7 ℓ)
-----------	---------------------------------

Capacities

Engine coolant	Change* ¹	
	Manual	1.69 US gal (6.4 ℓ)
	Automatic	1.72 US gal (6.5 ℓ)
Engine oil	Total	
	Manual	2.11 US gal (8.0 ℓ)
	Automatic	2.17 US gal (8.2 ℓ)
Automatic transmission fluid	Change* ²	
	Including filter	4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)
	Without filter	4.2 US qt (4.0 ℓ)
Manual transmission fluid	Total	5.3 US qt (5.0 ℓ)
	Change	3.1 US qt (2.9 ℓ)
	Total	7.9 US qt (7.5 ℓ) 8.1 US qt (7.7 ℓ) * ³
Windshield washer reservoir	Change	2.2 US qt (2.1 ℓ)
	Total	2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ)
Windshield washer reservoir	U.S. Vehicle	2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ)
	Canada Vehicle	4.8 US qt (4.5 ℓ)

* 1 : Including the coolant in the reserve tank and that remaining in the engine

Reserve tank capacity: 0.16 US gal (0.6 ℓ)

* 2 : Excluding the oil remaining in the engine

* 3 : Type S

Specifications

Lights

Headlight (High beam/Low beam)	12 V — 35 W (HID)
DRL	12 V — 60 W (HB3)
Front turn signal/parking lights	12 V — 21 W/2.2 CP
Front Fog lights	12 V — 51 W (HB4)
Rear turn signal	12 V — 21 W
Back-up lights	12 V — 21 CP
License plate light	12 V — 3 CP
Ceiling light	12 V — 5 W
Trunk light	12 V — 5 W
Door courtesy lights	12 V — 2 CP
Vanity mirror lights	12 V — 5 W
Map lights	12 V — 4 CP

Battery

Capacity	12 V — 72 AH/20 HR
----------	--------------------

Fuses

Interior	See page 330 or the fuse label attached to the inside of the fuse box door on each side of the dashboard.
Under-hood	See page 329 or the fuse box cover.

Engine

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke SOHC VTEC 6-cylinder (V6), gasoline engine
Bore x Stroke	3.50 x 3.39 in (89.0 x 86.0 mm) 3.50 x 3.66 in (89.0 x 93.0 mm)*
Displacement	195.9 cu-in (3,210 cm ³) 211.8 cu-in (3,471 cm ³)*
Compression ratio	11.0 : 1
Spark plugs	NGK: IZFR6K-11 DENSO: SKJ20DR-M11

* : Type S

Alignment

Toe-in	Front	0.00 in (0.0 mm)
	Rear	0.00 in (0.0 mm)
Camber	Front	-0°30'
	Rear	-1°00'
Caster	Front	3°17'

Tires

Size	Front/Rear	P235/45R17 93W* ¹ 235/45R17 93W* ²
	Spare	T135/80R16 101M T145/70R17 106M* ³
	Pressure	Front
	Rear	32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm ²)
	Spare	60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm ²)

* 1 : All season tire

* 3 : Type S

* 2 : Summer tire

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between the tread shoulder and the maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200
Traction AA
Temperature A

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction – AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance, which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109 and No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Tire Labeling

The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described below.

Tire Size

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size. Below is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

P235/45R17 93W

P — Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).

235 — Tire width in millimeters.

45 — Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).

R — Tire construction code (R indicates radial).

17 — Rim diameter in inches.

93 — Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).

W — Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

Tire Identification Number

The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the following example TIN. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

DOT OBGN PVC 2202

DOT — This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

OBGN — Manufacturer's identification mark.

PVC — Tire type code.

2202 — Date of manufacture.

Maximum Tire Pressure

Max Press — The maximum air pressure the tire can hold.

Maximum Tire Load

Max Load — The maximum load the tire can carry at maximum air pressure.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) – Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale



when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Technical Information

CONTINUED

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) – Required Federal Explanation

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is provided by a separate telltale, which displays the symbol “TPMS” when illuminated.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated,

TPMS

the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Emissions Controls

The burning of gasoline in your vehicle's engine produces several by-products. Some of these are carbon monoxide (CO), oxides of nitrogen (NOx), and hydrocarbons (HC). Gasoline evaporating from the tank also produces hydrocarbons. Controlling the production of NOx, CO, and HC is important to the environment. Under certain conditions of sunlight and climate, NOx and HC react to form photochemical "smog." Carbon monoxide does not contribute to smog creation, but it is a poisonous gas.

The Clean Air Act

The United States Clean Air Act* sets standards for automobile emissions. It also requires that automobile manufacturers explain to owners how their emissions controls work and what to do to maintain them. This section summarizes how the emissions controls work.

* In Canada, Acura vehicles comply with the Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (CMVSS) for Emissions valid at the time they are manufactured.

Crankcase Emissions Control System

Your vehicle has a positive crankcase ventilation system. This keeps gasses that build up in the engine's crankcase from going into the atmosphere. The positive crankcase ventilation valve routes them from the crankcase back to the intake manifold. They are then

drawn into the engine and burned.

Evaporative Emissions Control System

As gasoline evaporates in the fuel tank, an evaporative emissions control canister filled with charcoal adsorbs the vapor. It is stored in this canister while the engine is off. After the engine is started and warmed up, the vapor is drawn into the engine and burned during driving.

Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery

The onboard refueling vapor recovery (ORVR) system captures the fuel vapors during refueling. The vapors are adsorbed in a canister filled with activated carbon. While driving, the fuel vapors are drawn into the engine and burned off.

Emissions Controls

Exhaust Emissions Controls

The exhaust emissions controls include four systems: PGM-FI, ignition timing control, exhaust gas recirculation, and three way catalytic converter. These four systems work together to control the engine's combustion and minimize the amount of HC, CO, and NOx that come out the tailpipe. The exhaust emissions control systems are separate from the crankcase and evaporative emissions control systems.

PGM-FI System

The PGM-FI system uses sequential multipoint fuel injection. It has three subsystems: air intake, engine control, and fuel control. The powertrain control module (PCM) in automatic transmission vehicles or the engine control module (ECM) in manual transmission vehicles uses various sensors to determine how much air is going into the engine. It

then controls how much fuel to inject under all operating conditions.

Ignition Timing Control System

This system constantly adjusts the ignition timing, reducing the amount of HC, CO, and NOx produced.

Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System

The exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system takes some of the exhaust gas and routes it back into the intake manifold. Adding exhaust gas to the air/fuel mixture reduces the amount of NOx produced when the fuel is burned.

Three Way Catalytic Converter

The three way catalytic converter is in the exhaust system. Through chemical reactions, it converts HC, CO, and NOx in the engine's exhaust to carbon dioxide (CO₂), nitrogen (N₂), and water vapor.

Replacement Parts

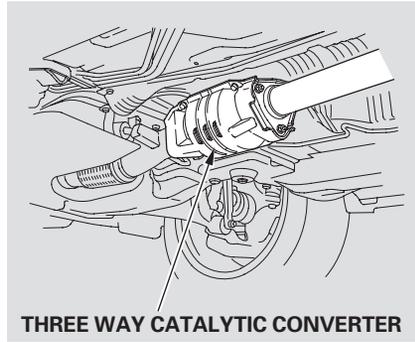
The emissions control systems are designed and certified to work together in reducing emissions to levels that comply with the Clean Air Act. To make sure the emissions remain low, you should use only new Acura replacement parts or their equivalent for repairs. Using lower quality parts may increase the emissions from your vehicle.

The emissions control systems are covered by warranties separate from the rest of your vehicle. Read your warranty manual for more information.

Three Way Catalytic Converter

The three way catalytic converter contains platinum, palladium, and rhodium. These metals serve as catalysts, promoting chemical reactions to convert the exhaust gasses without affecting the metals. The catalytic converter is referred to as a three-way catalyst, since it acts on HC, CO, and NO_x. A replacement unit must be an original Acura part or its equivalent.

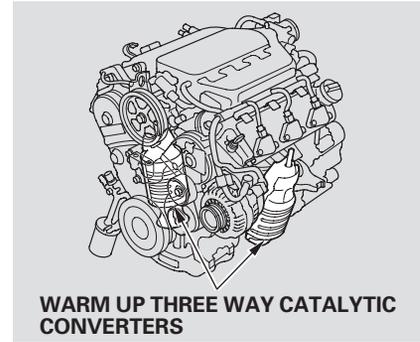
The three way catalytic converter must operate at a high temperature for the chemical reactions to take place. It can set on fire any combustible materials that come near it. Park your vehicle away from high grass, dry leaves, or other flammables.



THREE WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTER

A defective three way catalytic converter contributes to air pollution, and can impair your engine's performance. Follow these guidelines to protect your vehicle's three way catalytic converter.

- Always use unleaded gasoline. Even a small amount of leaded gasoline can contaminate the catalyst metals, making the three way catalytic converter ineffective.



WARM UP THREE WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTERS

- Keep the engine well maintained.
- Have your vehicle diagnosed and repaired if it is misfiring, back-firing, stalling, or otherwise not running properly.

State Emissions Testing

Testing of Readiness Codes

If you take your vehicle for a state emissions test shortly after the battery has been disconnected or gone dead, it may not pass the test. This is because of certain “readiness codes” that must be set in the on-board diagnostics for the emissions systems. These codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If the testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you will be requested to return at a later date to complete the test. If you must get the vehicle retested within the next two or three days, you can condition the vehicle for retesting by doing the following.

- Make sure the gas tank is nearly, but not completely, full (around 3/4).
- Make sure the vehicle has been parked with the engine off for 6 hours or more.
- Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40° and 95° F.

- Without touching the accelerator pedal, start the engine, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
- Keep the vehicle in Park (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission). Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there until the temperature gauge rises to at least 1/4 of the scale (about 3 minutes).
- Without touching the accelerator pedal, start the engine, and let it idle for 20 seconds.

State Emissions Testing

- Select a nearby lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in D (A/T) or 6th (M/T). Do not use the cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
- Then drive in city/suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
- Make sure the vehicle has been parked with the engine off for 30 minutes.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see your dealer.

06/08/18 21:34:14 31SEP630 0355

Warranty and Customer Relations

Customer Service Information.....	352
Warranty Coverages	353
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Vehicles)	354
Authorized Manuals	355

Warranty and Customer Relations

Customer Service Information

Your dealership personnel are trained professionals. They should be able to answer all your questions. If you encounter a problem that your dealership does not solve to your satisfaction, please discuss it with the dealership's management. The service manager or general manager can help. Almost all problems are solved in this way.

If you are dissatisfied with the decision made by the dealership's management, contact the Acura Client Services Office.

U.S. Owners:
American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Acura Client Services
Mail Stop 500-2N-7E
1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746

Tel: (800) 382-2238

Canadian Owners:
CUSTOMER RELATIONS
RELATIONS AVEC LA CLIENTÈLE

Honda Canada Inc.
715 Milner Avenue
Toronto, ON
M1B 2K8

Tel: 1-888-9-ACURA-9

Fax: Toll-free 1-877-939-0909
Toronto (416) 287-4776

In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands:

Vortex Motor Corp.
Bella International
P.O. Box 190816
San Juan, PR 00919-0816

Tel: (787) 620-7546

When you call or write, please give us this information:

- Vehicle identification number (see page 336)
- Name and address of the dealer who services your vehicle
- Date of purchase
- Mileage on your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

Warranty Coverages

U.S. Owners

Your new Acura is covered by these warranties:

New Vehicle Limited Warranty – covers your new vehicle, except for the battery, emissions control systems, and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty – these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

Original Equipment Battery Limited Warranty – this warranty gives up to 100 % credit toward a replacement battery.

Seat Belt Limited Warranty – a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Rust Perforation Limited Warranty – all exterior body panels are covered for rust-through from the inside for the specified time period with no mileage limit.

Accessory Limited Warranty – Acura accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty manual for details.

Replacement Parts Limited Warranty – covers all Acura replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

Replacement Battery Limited Warranty – provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from your dealer.

Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty – provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the 2007 Acura warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

Canadian Owners

Please refer to the 2007 warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Vehicles)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Acura Automobile Division, American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Acura Automobile Division, American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

Authorized Manuals

Purchasing Factory Authorized Manuals (U.S. only)

The publications shown below can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order in any of three ways:

- Detach and mail the order form on the right half of this page
- Call Helm Inc. at 1-800-782-4356 (credit card orders only)
- Go online at www.helminc.com

If you are interested in other years or models, contact Helm Inc. at 1-800-782-4356.

Publication Form Number	Form Description	Price Each*
61SEP03	2007 Acura TL Service Manual	\$75.00
61SEP03EL	2007 Acura TL Electrical Troubleshooting Manual	\$50.00
61SEP30	2004 Model Series Acura TL Body Repair Manual	\$44.00
31SEP630	2007 Acura TL Owner's Manual	\$37.00
31SEP800	2007 Acura TL Navigation Manual	\$29.00
31SEP930	2007 Acura TL Maintenance Journal	\$12.00
31SEPQ30	2007 Acura TL Quick Start Guide	\$12.00
ACU-R	Order Form for Previous Years- Indicate Year and Model Desired	FREE

* Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation.

Valid only for sales within the United States. Canadian owners should contact their authorized Acura dealer.

ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-782-4356 (NOTE: For Credit Card Holder Orders Only) Monday-Friday 8:00 A.M. — 6:00 P.M. EST MINIMUM CREDIT CARD PURCHASE \$10.00
--

OR

By completing this form you can order the materials desired. You can pay by check or money order, or charge to your credit card. Mail to Helm Incorporated at the address shown on the back of the order form.

2007 ACU	PUBLICATION NUMBER	VEHICLE MODEL		Qty	Price Each*	Total Price
		Name	Year			
* Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation.					TOTAL MATERIAL	
					Mich. Purchases Add 6% Sales Tax	
Orders are mailed within 10 days. Please allow adequate time for delivery.					HANDLING CHARGE	\$6.95
					GRAND TOTAL	

Authorized Manuals

Index

A	
Accessories and Modifications	240
Accessories.....	240
Modifications	241
ACCESSORY (Ignition Key Position).....	95
Accessory Power Sockets.....	120
AcuraLink	217
Adding Engine Coolant.....	286
Adding Engine Oil	283
Additives, Engine Oil.....	284
Airbag (SRS)	9, 22
Additional Information.....	22
Servicing	31
System Components.....	22
Air Conditioning System.....	126
Air Pressure, Tires	303
Antifreeze	286
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)	
Indicator.....	60, 262
Operation.....	262
Anti-theft, Audio System.....	182
Anti-theft Steering Column Lock ..	95
Audio System	133
Automatic Lighting Off Feature....	88

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners	20
Automatic Speed Control.....	184
Automatic Transmission.....	253
Capacity, Fluid	338
Checking Fluid Level	288
Shifting.....	253
Shift Lever Position Indicator ..	253
Shifting.....	253
Shift Lock Release.....	258

B	
Battery	
Charging System	
Indicator.....	59, 324
Jump Starting	320
Maintenance.....	308
Specifications	339
Before Driving	233
Belts, Seat.....	8, 18
Beverage Holder.....	120
Brakes	
Anti-lock System (ABS)	262
Break-in, New Linings	234
Fluid	291
Parking.....	117

System Indicator.....	59, 326
Wear Indicators	261
Braking System.....	261
Break-in, New Vehicle	234
Brightness Control, Instruments...	89
Brights, Headlights	86
Bulb Replacement	
Back-up Lights	297
Daytime Running Lights	293
Fog Lights	295
Specifications	339
Turn Signal Lights.....	294, 296
Bulbs, Halogen.....	293

C	
Capacities Chart.....	338
Carbon Monoxide Hazard	52
Carrying, Cargo	243
Cassette Player	
Care	154, 175
Operation.....	152, 173
CAUTION, Explanation of	ii
Ceiling Light.....	118

CONTINUED

INDEX

Index

Certification Label.....	336	Console Compartment	121	Dipstick	
Chains, tires.....	307	Consumer Information*	352	Automatic Transmission.....	288
Changing Oil		Controls, Instruments and.....	55	Engine Oil.....	238
How to	284	Coolant		Directional Signals.....	86
When to.....	273	Adding.....	286	Disc Brake Wear Indicators.....	261
Changing a Flat Tire	313	Checking.....	239	Disc Changer	145, 165
Charging System Indicator	59, 324	Proper Solution	286	Disc Changer Error Messages	176
Checklist, Before Driving	246	Temperature Gauge	65	Disposal of Used Oil.....	285
Childproof Door Locks	98	Crankcase Emissions Control		Doors	
Child Safety	33	System.....	345	Monitor Indicator	68
Booster Seats	49	Cruise Control Indicator	61	Power Door Locks.....	96
Child Seats.....	41	Cruise Control Operation	184	DOT Tire Quality Grading*	340
Infants	38	Cup Holders.....	120	Driver and Passenger Safety.....	5
Large Children.....	48	Customer Relations Office	352	Driving	245
LATCH.....	43			Economy	239
Risks with Airbags.....	34	D		Driving Position Memory	
Small Children.....	39	DANGER, Explanation of	ii	System.....	108
Tethers.....	46	Dashboard	3, 56		
Where Should a Child Sit?.....	34	Daytime Running Lights.....	88	E	
Cleaning		Daytime Running Light Indicator..	62	Economy, Fuel	239
Seat Belts.....	299	Defects, Reporting Safety*	354	Emergencies on the Road.....	311
Climate Control System.....	131	Defogger, Rear Window	90	Battery, Jump Starting	320
Clock	116	Defrosting the Windows.....	130	Brake System Indicator	326
CO in the Exhaust	52	Dimensions.....	338	Changing a Flat Tire	313
Compact Spare tire	312	Dimming the Headlights	86	Charging System Indicator	324
Compass.....	228				

Index

Gauges	
Engine Coolant Temperature	65
Fuel.....	65
Speedometer	65
Tachometer	65
Gearshift Lever Positions	
Automatic Transmission.....	253
6-speed Manual	
Transmission.....	250
Glove Box	121

H

Halogen Fog Bulbs	295
HandsFree Link (HFL).....	190
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	90
Headlights.....	86
Aiming.....	293
Automatic Lighting Off	
Feature.....	88
Daytime Running Lights.....	88
High Beam Indicator	62
Reminder Chime.....	86
Turning on.....	86
Head Restraints	104
High-Low Beam Switch	86

IV

HomeLink Universal	
Transceiver.....	187
Hood, Opening the	237

I

Identification Number, Vehicle....	336
Ignition	
Keys.....	92
Switch.....	95
Timing Control System.....	346
Immobilizer System.....	94
Important Safety Precautions	6
Indicators	58
ABS (Anti-Lock Brake).....	60, 262
Brake (Parking and Brake	
System)	59, 326
Charging System	59, 324
Cruise Control.....	61
DRL (Daytime Running	
Lights)	62
Fog Light	63
High Beam.....	62
Key (Immobilizer System)	63
Low Fuel.....	63
Low Oil Pressure	59, 324

Side Airbag Off	30, 60
SRS	29, 60
Turn Signal and Hazard	
Warning	62
VSA Activation	61
VSA System	61
Infant Restraint	38
Infant Seats.....	38
Tether Anchorage Points	46
Inflation, Proper Tire	302
Inside Mirror	106
Inspection, Tire	304
Instrument Panel	57
Instrument Panel Indicators.....	58
Instrument Panel Brightness	89
Interior Lights.....	118
Introduction	i

J

Jacking up the Vehicle	314
Jack, Tire	313
Jump Starting	320

Index

K	
Keys.....	92
Keyless Memory Setting	76
L	
Label, Certification	336
Lane Change, Signaling	86
Lap/Shoulder Belts	19
Lights	
Bulb Replacement	293
Indicator.....	58
Parking.....	86
Turn Signal.....	86
Load Limit	243
LOCK (Ignition Key Position)	95
Lockout Prevention	96
Locks	
Anti-theft Steering Column	95
Glove Box	121
Power Door	96
Trunk	97
Low Coolant Level.....	239
Low Oil Pressure Indicator	59, 324
Lubricant Specifications Chart	338

Luggage, Storing (Cargo)	243
M	
Maintenance.....	271
Minder.....	273
Owner Maintenance Checks....	277
Record.....	279
Safety.....	272
Malfunction Indicator	
Lamp	59, 325
Manual Transmission.....	250
Manual Transmission Fluid	290
Memory, Driving Position	108
Meters, Gauges.....	65
Mirrors, Adjusting	106
Modifying Your Vehicle.....	241
Moonroof	116
Multi-Information Display	66
Engine Oil Life	72
HandsFreeLink.....	73
Keyless Memory Settings	76
Maintenance Minder.....	273
Odometer.....	70
Outside Temperature.....	71
Trip Computer	73

Trip Meter	70
N	
Neutral Gear Position.....	254
New Vehicle Break-in	234
NOTICE, Explanation of.....	i
Numbers, Identification	336
O	
Octane Requirement, Gasoline	234
Odometer.....	70
Odometer, Trip	70
Oil	
Change, How to	284
Change, When to	273
Checking Engine	238
Pressure Indicator	51, 324
Selecting Proper Viscosity	
Chart	283
ON (Ignition Key Position)	95
Onboard Refueling Vapor	
Recovery	345

CONTINUED

INDEX

V

Index

Outside Mirrors 106
 Outside Temperature 71
 Overheating, Engine 322
 Owner's Maintenance Checks 277

P

Panel Brightness Control 89
 Park Gear Position 254
 Parking 260
 Parking Brake 117
 Parking Brake and Brake System
 Indicator 59, 326
 Parking Lights 86
 Parking Over Things that Burn... 260
 Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 30
 PGM-FI System 346
 Power Socket Locations 120
 Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts 16
 Protecting Adults and Teens 11
 Additional Safety Precautions ... 17
 Advice for Pregnant Women 16
 Protecting Children 33
 Installing a Child Seat Using
 Latch 43

Installing a Child Seat with a
 Lap/Shoulder Belt 45
 Installing a Child Seat with a
 Tether 46
 Selecting a Child Seat 41
 Protecting Infants 38
 Protecting Larger Children 48
 Protecting Small Children 39
 Protecting Your Discs 177

R

Radiator Overheating 322
 Radio/Cassette/Disc Sound
 System 133
 Readiness Codes 325, 348
 Rear Lights, Bulb Replacement ... 296
 Rear Seat Armrest 104
 Rear View Camera and Monitor .. 231
 Rear View Mirror 106
 Rear Window Defogger 90
 Reclining the Seat Backs 103
 Reminder Lights 58
 Remote Audio Controls 181
 Remote Transmitter 99

Replacement Information
 Engine Oil and Filter 284
 Fuses 327
 Light Bulbs 293
 Tires 306
 Wiper Blades 300
 Replacing Seat Belts After a
 Crash 21
 Reserve Tank, Engine Coolant ... 239
 Restraint, Child 38, 39
 Reverse Gear Position 254
 Rotation, Tire 305

S

Safety Belts 8, 18
 Safety Defects, Reporting* 354
 Safety Features 7
 Airbags 9
 Door Locks 11
 Head Restraints 13
 Seat Belts 8
 Seats and Seat-Backs 12
 Safety Labels, Location of 53
 Safety Messages ii
 Satellite Radio 139, 159

Index

Seat Belts 8, 18	Sound System..... 133	Stereo Sound System 133
Additional Information..... 18	Spare Tire	Storing Your Vehicle 309
Cleaning 299	Inflating 312	Sunglasses Holder 122
Lap/Shoulder Belt..... 19	Specifications 339	Supplemental Restraint System 22
Maintenance..... 21	Specifications Charts..... 338	Servicing 31
Reminder Light and	Speed Control..... 184	SRS Indicator..... 29
Beeper 18, 58	SRS, Additional Information..... 37	System Components..... 22
System Components..... 18	Additional Safety Precautions.... 32	
Use During Pregnancy..... 16	Airbag Components..... 22	T
Seat Heaters 111	Airbag Service 31	Tachometer 65
Seats, Adjusting the..... 103	How the SRS Indicator	Taking Care of the Unexpected .. 311
Security System 183	Works 29	Tape Player 152, 173
Sequential SportShift Mode 255	How Your Front Airbags	Technical Descriptions
Serial Number 336	Work..... 24	DOT Tire Quality Grading* 340
Service Intervals 273	How Your Side Airbags Work.... 27	Emissions Control Systems..... 345
Service Manual* 355	How Your Side Curtain Airbags	Three Way Catalytic
Service Station Procedures 235	Work..... 29	Converter 347
Setting the Clock 116	SRS Indicator..... 29, 60	Temperature Gauge 65
Shift Lever Position Indicator 253	START (Ignition Key Position) 95	Temperature, Outside..... 71
Shift Lock Release 258	Starting the Engine 247, 248	Temperature, Inside Sensor..... 132
Shifting..... 250, 253	With a Dead Battery 320	Tether Anchorage Points 46
Side Airbags 9, 27	State Emissions Testing 348	Three Way Catalytic Converter... 347
Side Airbag Off Indicator 30, 60	Steam Coming from Engine..... 322	Tilt the Steering Wheel..... 91
Side Curtain Airbags 29	Steering Wheel	
Signaling Turns..... 86	Adjustment 91	
Snow Tires..... 307	Anti-theft Column Lock 95	

CONTINUED

Index

Time, Setting the	116	Towing		Unleaded Gasoline.....	234
Tire Chains	307	A Trailer.....	270	Used Oil, How to Dispose of	285
Tire, How to Change a Flat	313	Emergency Wrecker	331		
Tire Pressure Monitoring		Traction Devices.....	307	V	
System.....	266	Transmission		Vehicle Capacity Load	243
Low Tire Pressure		Checking Fluid Level,		Vehicle Dimensions.....	338
Indicator.....	64, 266	Automatic	288	Vehicle Identification Number.....	336
TPMS System Indicator.....	68, 269	Checking Fluid Level Manual..	290	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	
TPMS System Failure	269	Fluid Selection	288, 290	System.....	264
Tire Pressure Monitoring System		Identification Number.....	336	VSA System Indicator.....	61, 264
Messages.....	268	Shifting the Automatic.....	253	VSA Activation Indicator	61, 264
Tires	302	Shifting the Manual.....	250	VSA Off Switch	265
Air Pressure	303	Treadwear	340	Vehicle Storage.....	309
Checking Wear	304	Trip Computer	73	VIN	336
Compact Spare.....	312	Trip Meter	70	Viscosity, Oil.....	283
DOT Tire Quality Grading	340	Trunk.....	97		
Inflation.....	303	Emergency Trunk Release.....	98	W	
Inspection	304	Opening the.....	97	WARNING, Explanation of	ii
Replacing	306	Open Monitor Light	68	Warning Labels, Location of	53
Rotating.....	305	Turn Signals	86	Warranty Coverages*	353
Snow	307			Washer, Windshield	
Specifications	339	U		Checking the Fluid Level	287
Summer Tire	307	Unexpected, Taking Care		Operation	85
Traction Devices.....	307	of the	311		
Winter Driving	307	Uniform Tire Quality Grading	340		
Tools, Tire Changing	313				

Index

Wheels	
Adjusting the Steering	91
Alignment and Balance	305
Compact Spare	312
Windows	
Operating the Power	112
Rear, Defogger	90
Windshield	
Cleaning	85
Defroster	130
Washers	287
Wipers, Windshield	
Changing Blades	300
Operation	85
Worn Tires	304
Wrecker, Emergency Towing	331

*: U.S.

X

XM Satellite Radio	139, 159
--------------------------	----------

INDEX

Service Information Summary

Gasoline:

Premium unleaded gasoline, pump octane number of 91 or higher.

Fuel Tank Capacity:

17.1 US gal (64.7 ℓ)

Recommended Engine Oil:

API Service SJ "Energy Conserving" oil, SAE 5W-20 viscosity (see page 283).

Oil change capacity (including filter):

4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)

Automatic Transmission Fluid:

Honda ATF-Z1 (Automatic Transmission Fluid) preferred, or a DEXRON® III ATF as a temporary replacement (see page 288).

Manual Transmission Fluid:

Honda Manual Transmission Fluid preferred, or an SAE 10W-30 or 10W-40 motor oil as a temporary replacement (see page 290).

Capacity:

2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ)

Power Steering Fluid:

Honda Power Steering Fluid preferred, or another brand of power steering fluid as a temporary replacement. Do not use ATF (see page 292).

Brake Fluid:

Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 preferred, or a DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid as a temporary replacement (see page 291).

Tire Pressure (measured cold):

All models except Type S

Front:

33 psi (230 kPa , 2.3 kgf/cm²)

Rear:

32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)

Type S

Front:

35 psi (240 kPa , 2.4 kgf/cm²)

Rear:

32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²)

Spare Tire Pressure:

60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm²)